



digital  
vision  
group

## **TRIPclassic User's Guide**

TRIPsystem  
Product Documentation

## End User License Agreement

All rights to this software, its documentation and logotypes of the TRIP product family and software (altogether “Software”) supplied by DVG Operations GmbH (DVG) are exclusively owned by DVG.

The transfer of this Software, solutions or parts thereof requires the prior written agreement of DVG. Furthermore, the customer has the right to use licensed Software and / or process solutions supplied by DVG to the extent specified in his contract with DVG.

The free-to-use non-commercial version doesn't require a prior written agreement with DVG but such customers, organizations and/or third parties agree by using the software and / or solution of DVG to be strongly obliged to keep all rights to this software, documentation and logotypes of the TRIP product family absolutely un infringed and protected.



## Table of Contents

<b>ABOUT THIS GUIDE .....</b>	<b>8</b>
STATUS OF THIS GUIDE .....	8
SCOPE AND ASSUMPTIONS.....	8
CONVENTIONS USED IN THIS GUIDE.....	8
THE STRUCTURE OF THIS GUIDE.....	10
THE TRIP DOCUMENTATION LIBRARY .....	10
WHAT TRIP RECOGNISES.....	10
<b>INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>12</b>
THE CONTENT OF THIS GUIDE.....	12
THE CCL COMMAND WINDOW .....	12
COMMAND ENTRY BOX SEARCHING .....	12
<b>CHAPTER 1: TUTORIAL ONE .....</b>	<b>15</b>
LOGGING ON.....	15
SEARCHING .....	18
SHOWING SEARCH RESULTS.....	20
PRINTING SEARCH RESULTS .....	22
ENDING THE SEARCH SESSION .....	23
<b>CHAPTER 2: TUTORIAL TWO .....</b>	<b>25</b>
SEARCHING FOR NUMBERS, DATES AND TIMES .....	26
SEARCHING IN PHRASE FIELDS .....	27
DISPLAYING THE DATABASE VOCABULARY .....	29
OUTPUT FORMATS (REPORTS) .....	32
PREVIOUS ORDERS AND COMMANDS.....	36
SORTING THE RESULTS .....	36
DATABASES AND DEFAULTS: STATUS, BASE AND DEFINE? .....	37
ERROR MESSAGES AND HELP.....	41
ENDING A SEARCH SESSION .....	42
<b>CHAPTER 3: TUTORIAL THREE .....</b>	<b>45</b>
COMBINING WITH THE LATEST SEARCH RESULT.....	46
DELETING SEARCHES .....	46
'NEGATIVE' SEARCHES .....	47
SEARCHING FOR EMPTY/NON-EMPTY FIELDS .....	47
SEARCHING USING RECORD NUMBERS .....	48
FOCUS - SHOWING ONLY HITS IN RECORDS.....	48
SAVING A SEARCH ORDER .....	50
DELETING SEARCHES, CHANGING DATABASES .....	53
STATUS REVISITED - ON SCREEN AND IN PRINT.....	54
SEARCHING FOR A WHOLE PHRASE.....	55
SEARCHING BY FIELD NAME .....	57
MORE ABOUT TRUNCATION AND MASKING .....	57

<b>CHAPTER 4: SEARCH FORM SEARCHING .....</b>	<b>61</b>
ELEMENTS OF A SEARCH FORM .....	61
USING A SEARCH FORM .....	62
Access .....	62
Anatomy of a Search Form.....	63
Cursor Movement Within Search Forms .....	64
New Searches .....	64
Modifying Searches .....	66
Display in Search Forms.....	67
<b>CHAPTER 5: ADVANCED FEATURES .....</b>	<b>71</b>
WEB STYLE SEARCHING – DEFINING FIND AS FUZZ.....	71
BEST MATCH SEARCHING – FIND ABOUT() .....	71
Overview.....	71
Performing a best match search.....	72
Setting up a database to support best match query.....	72
SEARCHING USING CATEGORIES – FIND CLASS() .....	73
FUZZY SEARCHING – THE FUZZ COMMAND .....	74
FUZZY LOGIC AND RELEVANCE RANKING .....	78
SEARCHING MORE THAN ONE DATABASE .....	79
SEARCHING ONE OF SEVERAL OPEN DATABASES .....	82
DEFINING A SCOPE LIMIT .....	83
OTHER FORMS OF THE AND OPERATOR.....	84
CHANGING FORMAT DURING A SHOW ORDER.....	85
PRINTING.....	87
Print Commands.....	87
Other Print Commands.....	88
Printing Locally .....	88
DATES, TIMES, NUMBERS AND INTEGERS.....	89
SEARCHING BY MINUTES AND SECONDS .....	91
MEASURE AND FREQUENCY .....	92
MEasure.....	92
FRequency.....	92
TIMESTAMP .....	93
TIMESTAMP SDI .....	94
RECORD NUMBER SDI .....	95
SEARCHING TUPLED FIELDS.....	96
DEFINING MAXIMUMS AND MINIMUMS .....	97
Maximums.....	97
Minimums.....	97
COMBINATIONS OF FIELDS: VIEWS.....	98
DISPLAY FEATURES .....	99
Display of the Contents of a Field.....	99
Display of the Terms of a Search Result.....	99
Display Sorted by Frequency.....	100
DEFINING THE ‘,’ AND ‘ ’ TO REPRESENT OTHER OPERATORS .....	100
The Logical OR Operator.....	100
The Logical AND Operators .....	101

<i>Field-Specific Definitions For Space .....</i>	<i>101</i>
<b>CHAPTER 6: THESAURUS SEARCHING .....</b>	<b>103</b>
THESAURUS STRUCTURE .....	103
ELEMENTS AND THEIR USE .....	103
<i>The Controlled Term.....</i>	<i>103</i>
<i>The Broader Term.....</i>	<i>104</i>
<i>The Narrower Term.....</i>	<i>104</i>
<i>The Related Term.....</i>	<i>105</i>
DEFINING AND USING THE THESAURUS .....	105
CCL ORDERS AND THE THESAURUS.....	108
STRUCTURE OF THESAURUS THESALI.....	112
EXERCISES IN SEARCHING .....	113
<b>CHAPTER 7: INDIRECT SEARCHING .....</b>	<b>117</b>
THE INDIRECT SEARCH PROCESS .....	117
THE DEFINE MAP ORDER.....	117
EXACT PHRASE MATCHING .....	123
REFERENCE TO AN EARLIER SEARCH .....	124
BROADENING A SEARCH WITHIN A DATABASE.....	124
INTERNAL TRANSACTION SETS.....	126
EXTERNAL TRANSACTION SETS .....	128
MAXIMUM LIMITS.....	128
<b>CHAPTER 8: HEAD AND PART RECORDS .....</b>	<b>131</b>
DEFINING TERMS .....	132
SEARCHING .....	134
EXAMPLES.....	134
OUTPUT AND SORTING .....	136
<i>Output.....</i>	<i>136</i>
<i>Sorting.....</i>	<i>136</i>
<b>CHAPTER 9: DATA ENTRY .....</b>	<b>143</b>
ENTRY FORM FIELD CHARACTERISTICS.....	143
<i>Default Values .....</i>	<i>143</i>
<i>Data Checking.....</i>	<i>144</i>
<i>Long Phrase Field.....</i>	<i>144</i>
<i>Protected Fields .....</i>	<i>144</i>
<i>Sticky Fields.....</i>	<i>145</i>
LISTING AVAILABLE DATA ENTRY FORMS .....	145
USING ENTRY FORMS.....	146
<i>Starting Entry From The System Prompt.....</i>	<i>146</i>
<i>Starting Entry From CCL.....</i>	<i>146</i>
<i>Starting Entry From the Primary Option Menu .....</i>	<i>147</i>
EDITING KEYS FOR DATA ENTRY .....	149
DATABASE FIELD TYPES.....	150
<i>Entry Into DAta Fields.....</i>	<i>151</i>
<i>Entry Into TIme Fields .....</i>	<i>151</i>
<i>Entry Into PHrase Fields .....</i>	<i>151</i>

<i>Entry Into TExt Fields</i> .....	151
ADDING RECORDS .....	152
<i>Record Locking</i> .....	152
SAVING RECORDS.....	153
EXIT FROM DATA ENTRY.....	154
MODIFYING RECORDS .....	154
<i>Modifying A Record From The System Prompt</i> .....	154
<i>Modifying A Record From CCL</i> .....	154
<i>Modifying A Record From The Primary Option Menu</i> .....	155
DELETING RECORDS.....	157
<i>Deleting Records From The System Prompt</i> .....	157
<i>Deleting Records From the Primary Option Menu</i> .....	157
DATA ENTRY WITH RECORD PARTS .....	158
<i>Selecting a Record Part</i> .....	158
<i>Inserting a Record Part</i> .....	159
<i>Renaming a Record Part</i> .....	159
<i>Deleting a Record Part</i> .....	159
<i>Undeleting the Last Deleted Record Part</i> .....	159
<b>CHAPTER 10: USER ADMINISTRATION .....</b>	<b>161</b>
CHANGING YOUR PASSWORD .....	161
USER PROFILE .....	162
<i>User Details</i> .....	163
<i>Start Procedure and Module</i> .....	163
<i>Manager and Group Details</i> .....	163
<i>Username</i> .....	163
<i>Date Form</i> .....	164
<b>CHAPTER 11: USER PROCEDURES .....</b>	<b>167</b>
CLASSES OF PROCEDURES .....	167
CONFLICTING NAMES.....	167
DISPLAYING AVAILABLE PROCEDURES.....	168
CREATING AND MODIFYING PROCEDURES.....	168
<i>Rules for Writing Simple Procedures</i> .....	169
<i>Accessing Procedures</i> .....	169
<i>Creating Procedures</i> .....	170
<i>Modifying Procedures</i> .....	171
<i>Nesting Procedures</i> .....	172
COPYING PROCEDURES .....	174
DELETING PROCEDURES .....	175
PROCEDURES FROM SAVE ORDERS.....	176
PROCEDURES WITH ARGUMENTS.....	178
TEXT SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES .....	180
<b>CHAPTER 12: MACROS.....</b>	<b>183</b>
MACRO FACILITIES WITHIN TRIP .....	183
<i>Macro Structure</i> .....	183
<i>Macro Arguments, Variables and Functions</i> .....	183
<i>Macro Statements</i> .....	186

MACRO EXAMPLES .....	190
PUBLIC.MACROHELP.....	191
PUBLIC.MACROSTRUCTURE .....	192
PUBLIC.MACROHEADER .....	193
PUBLIC.MACROARGUMENT .....	193
PUBLIC.MACROSTATEMENTSE.....	194
PUBLIC.MACROSTATEMENTS .....	195
PUBLIC.MACROWRITE .....	197
PUBLIC.MACROREAD.....	197
PUBLIC.MACROIF .....	198
PUBLIC.MACROGOTO .....	199
PUBLIC.MACROEXIT .....	199
PUBLIC.MACROCCL .....	200
PUBLIC.MACROTRACK .....	200
PUBLIC.MACROCOMMENT .....	201
PUBLIC.MACROCLEAR.....	201
PUBLIC.MACROFUNCTIONS.....	202
<b>APPENDIX A: CLI SWITCHES .....</b>	<b>205</b>
CLI EXAMPLES.....	207
<b>APPENDIX B: .....</b>	<b>208</b>
KEYBOARD KEY COMBINATIONS FOR EMULATING VT KEYPAD KEYS .....	208
<b>LIST OF FIGURES .....</b>	<b>209</b>
<b>LIST OF TABLES .....</b>	<b>213</b>
<b>INDEX.....</b>	<b>214</b>

## About This Guide

### Status of this Guide

This guide is updated to TRIP v7 status. While every effort has been made to ensure this guide is as up-to-date as possible, please refer to the TRIPsystem release notes and the new features document. Also refer to the TRIPmmc.chm help file for any 'hot off the press' information about TRIPmanager.

### Scope and Assumptions

This guide describes the use of TRIPsystem version 7.0.0 or later via the TRIPclassic interface, which encompasses the creation and maintenance of databases and the management of user access to the system and its databases.

### Conventions Used in this Guide

Certain symbols and conventions are used throughout this manual to indicate words or phrases with special meanings. A word might indicate the name of a key on the keyboard (**<Tab>**), an option in the menus (**CCL Search**), one of TRIP's command words (**DEfine** or **DE**), the name of a database (**Alice**) or a word being searched for (**wonderland**). The conventions and styles used are summarized below:

*italic*      used to indicate variables such as *fieldtype* or *databasename*, and to emphasize important terms and concepts

**bold**      used to indicate anything that TRIP recognizes or can interpret and act upon, such as the things mentioned above (**<Tab>**, **CCL Search**, **DEfine**, **Alice**, and **wonderland**)

lower case      used for terms and variables where variables are also italic

Upper Case      used for proper names such as the database **Alice**

**Courier fonts**      examples containing specific text which you are to type in

**<>**      chevrons—used to indicate key(s) on the keyboard such as **<Tab>** or **<Enter>**

**↵**      left arrow used after commands, meaning 'press either **<Enter>** or **<Return>**'

**<Next>**      the **<Page Down>** or **<Next Page>** key

**<Prev>**      the **<Page Up>** or **<Previous Page>** key

**<Gold>**      the **<PF1>** key

**<Leave>**      the **<PF3>** key

**" "**      messages provided by TRIP



*Notes:*

- *In this and other manuals of the TRIP product family, the terms 'order' and 'command' are synonymous to each other, as are the terms 'modifier' and 'function'; e.g. in 'DEfine FUzz', the modifier/function is 'FUzz', while the CCL order/command is 'DEFine'.*
- *In the TRIPclassic for windows interface, when using a standard 102 key keyboard, the VT keypad function keys <PF1> to <PF4> are transposed to the PC function keys <F1> to <F4> respectively. For further details on using a non-VT keyboard, see Appendix B, "Keyboard Key Combinations for Emulating VT Keypad Keys".*



## The Structure of this Guide

This manual is divided into six main parts:

**Walk Through Tutorial Sessions:** Chapters One through Three contain three command-driven search tutorials, which cover the use of the main search commands. We encourage you to work through each tutorial (and, if possible, each succeeding chapter) in sequence, and to try the examples given using the demonstration databases provided.

**Advanced Searching:** Chapters Four through Eight cover more advanced search techniques, including indirect searching using the command line and searching with search forms.

**Data Entry:** Chapter Nine.

**User Administration and Procedures:** Chapters Ten, Eleven and Twelve.

**Macros:** Chapter Twelve.

**Appendices:** CLI Switches.

The chapters are divided into short sections, each introducing a single concept and giving examples where appropriate. These can be used either for reference or as tutorials, repeating the examples given in the demonstration databases **Alice**, **Carroll**, **Corr** and **Thesali**.

## The TRIP Documentation Library

Other members of the TRIP documentation library include, but are not limited to, the Installation Guides, Release Notes, Release Histories, TRIPmanager Administration Guide, TRIPclassic Administration guide, TRIPclassic User Guide, CCL Command Reference, the TRIPtoolkit.chm help file and the notes and help files included with TRIP add-ons such as the programming APIs.

If you are not already familiar with searching and CCL (TRIP's Common Command Language), we recommend that you first read the Introduction, followed by the self-tutorials in chapters one through three, placing special emphasis on the basic commands Find, Display, Show, Print, DEfine, List, BASe, DElete, SStatus, Run, SAve and Help.

*Note:*

*Additional information on the above CCL commands (and others) is available in the CCL Command Reference.*

## What TRIP Recognises

TRIP possesses its own vocabulary, which consists of any word of the Common Command Language (CCL), i.e. all operators, modifiers, qualifiers and keywords. It also acknowledges all real names for fields, records, views, databases etc. in the current TRIP environment.

Variables are occasionally used both in text and examples, which are single symbols or words which may be replaced by a constant (i.e. a proper name, term or value). *Fieldname*, *fieldtype*, *viewname*, *recordno*, and *databasename* are examples of variables.

Be sure to distinguish the difference between a field itself, a field's name (such as **person** in the database **Alice**), and the variable *fieldname*, which may be substituted by any real field's name.



## Introduction

### The Content of this Guide

This guide presents the basic skills and concepts necessary to get you started with using TRIPclassic for UNIX and Windows.

In TRIP, *search orders* (or *commands*) are the strings of symbols and characters used to locate information in a TRIP database. These can be typed in a command box on the screen, and the results or answers from the system are shown in other boxes.

### The CCL command window

After connecting and logging in to a TRIPsystem server (see Chapter 1), you will navigate to a terminal session window similar in appearance to the screenshot in Figure 0–1 below.

Here you can see the three main areas of the CCL command window, the Command entry box (bottom left), the Command History box (middle left) and the name of the database being searched (bottom right - In this instance, the 'CORR' database is being searched). The (blank) upper area is where any search results will be displayed.

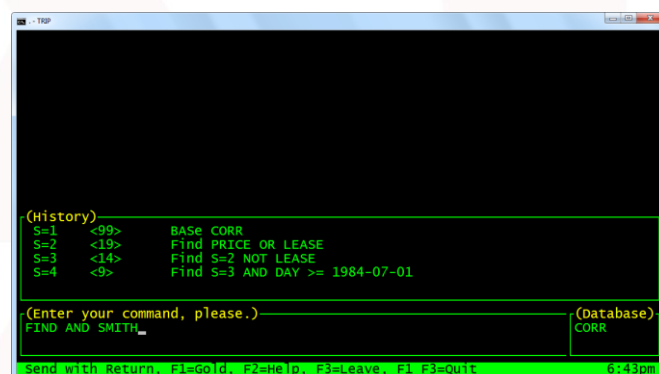


Figure 0–1 A search in TRIPclassic

### Command entry box searching

The command entry box will take searches using **CCL** or **Common Command Language** to tell the system what you want to look for, and what you want to do with the results of your searches. CCL searches are created using a handful of simple commands and the words or phrases (terms) that you want to find.

In TRIPclassic, you can also use *search forms* (predefined application-specific screens) which are tailored for searching in one or more databases.

Throughout the search sessions we will be using the demonstration database **Corr** as an example. This very small database contains **Correspondence** to and from a software company in the form of letters and telexes. Each piece of correspondence

constitutes a record and contains the following information: the date, category and text of each message, and the name, company name, address and country of each sender and recipient, as well as any modifications made to the record.

To make searching for such a wide variety of information easier, each record is divided into fields, with the name of the sender in one field, the date in another, and so on. Each field has a name that you can refer to when searching.

Different types of data are stored in different types of fields. In TRIP there are six searchable data types, **T**ext, **P**Hrase, **N**umber, **I**nteger, **D**ate and **T**ime, and one non-searchable data type, **S**tring, which is intended for storage of binary data such as photographs or vocal annotations.

Four of these data types are used in database **Corr**, which is organised in this fashion:

Field Name	Data Type	Contains
<b>rname</b>	PHrase	Recipient: name
<b>rcomp</b>	"	" company
<b>raddr</b>	"	" address
<b>rcountry</b>	"	" country
<b>sname</b>	"	Sender: name
<b>scomp</b>	"	" company
<b>saddr</b>	"	" address
<b>scountry</b>	"	" country
<b>day</b>	DAt	Date of the message
<b>cat</b>	PHrase	Type of documentation
<b>content</b>	TExt	Text of the message
<b>modified</b>	PHrase	Modified by (TRIP username)
<b>moddate</b>	DAt	Modification: date
<b>modtime</b>	TIme	" time
<b>modnote</b>	PHrase	Modifier's note

## Part 1:

# Self-Tutorial Sessions



## Chapter 1: Tutorial One

This first tutorial session covers logging on to the system, performing a basic search, displaying and printing the results and ending a search session.

You will need two pieces of information from your System or User Manager to begin using TRIP:

- Your Username
- Your Password

### Logging On

After starting TRIP (following instructions obtained from your System Manager), the system asks for your Username (Figure 1–1):



Figure 1–1 The Logon screen for TRIPclassic

Type this in without any spaces, then press <Return> or <Enter> (symbol: ↵). The cursor (the flashing bar) moves to the 'Password:' field. Now type in your password, again without spaces. For your protection, none of the characters you type are echoed (printed) to the screen; however, this means that you must type carefully. Press ↵ when you are finished. If you make a mistake in the **Logon** screen, TRIP informs you that either the username or password is incorrect and allows you to edit the username or retype the password as necessary.

A screen called the Primary Option Menu appears, displaying options **Search**, **Administration**, **Data Entry**, **Other** and **Quit** (Figure 1–2):

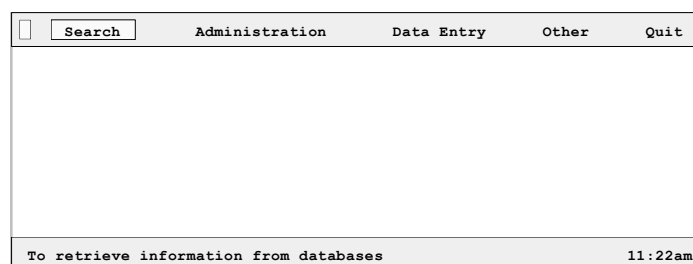


Figure 1–2 The Primary Option Menu

The cursor will be positioned in the upper left corner of the menu, with **Search** bolded or highlighted. To start CCL for the tutorials, allow the cursor to remain at the left of **Search** and press  $\downarrow$  or the  $\langle \downarrow \text{ Arrow} \rangle$  (down arrow) key. A submenu box will appear with the cursor to the left of **CCL Search**, which will also be bolded or highlighted (Figure 1–3).

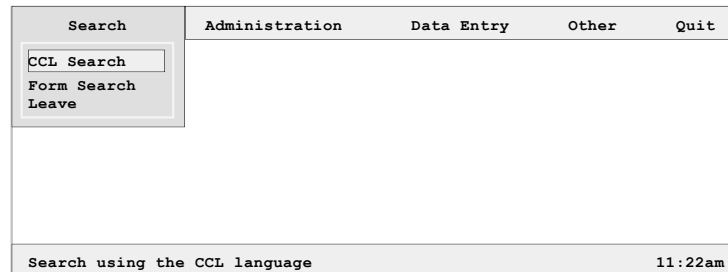


Figure 1–3 The Search submenu screen

Press  $\downarrow$  again to select CCL searching.

The CCL Search screen is then presented, the cursor coming to rest in the Command box labeled '(Enter your command, please.)' (Figure 1–4).

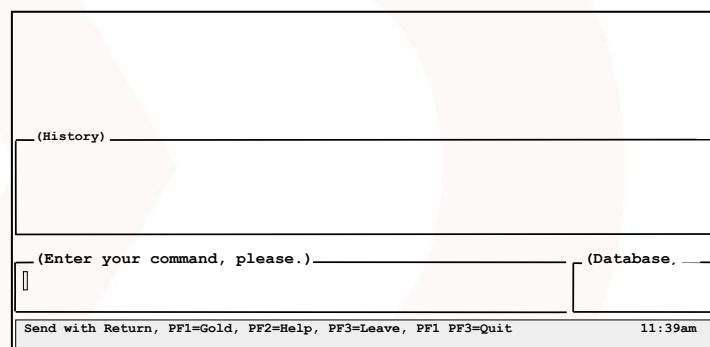


Figure 1–4 The CCL Search screen

The '(Database)' box in the lower right corner of the screen is empty, meaning that no database has been opened yet. If you are unsure of the name of the database you wish to access, type the word '**BASe**' (which can be shortened to **BAS**) at the cursor location and press  $\downarrow$  as shown below:

**bas**  $\downarrow$

*Note:*

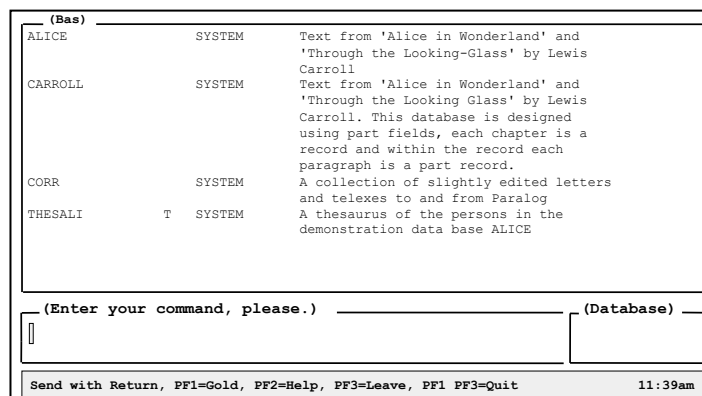
*Whenever a new command, order or modifier is presented for the first time, the shorthand form or briefest possible character combination will be given as shown above.*

If you make an error in typing, use the  $\langle \text{Backspace} \leftarrow \rangle$  key to delete text, or erase the entire order by clearing the Command box with  $\langle \text{Gold} \rangle \langle \text{C} \rangle$ . Press  $\downarrow$  when you have finished typing each search command so that TRIP knows to begin work.

All the databases available to you will appear in alphabetical order by database name, with a short description of the contents of each. These are presented in a



new window (called the **Show** area), which is labelled with the command just typed, in this case '(Bas)' (Figure 1–5).



(Bas)

ALICE	SYSTEM	Text from 'Alice in Wonderland' and 'Through the Looking-Glass' by Lewis Carroll
CARROLL	SYSTEM	Text from 'Alice in Wonderland' and 'Through the Looking Glass' by Lewis Carroll. This database is designed using part fields, each chapter is a record and within the record each paragraph is a part record.
CORR	SYSTEM	A collection of slightly edited letters and telexes to and from Paralog
THESALI	T SYSTEM	A thesaurus of the persons in the demonstration data base ALICE

(Enter your command, please.) (Database)

Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit 11:39am

Figure 1–5 The BASe screen

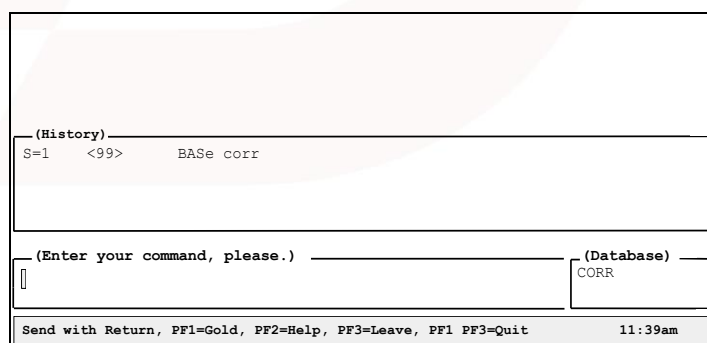
To open the database called **Corr**, type the following order in the Command window and press ↵:

**bas corr** ↵

The cursor is returned to the Command box, and TRIP confirms the order by writing the name of the database in the 'Open Database' window. TRIP immediately tells you the total number of indexed (searchable) records in the newly-opened database. The total, in this case ninety-nine records, is noted as the first search result in the Search History box (labeled 'History')

S=1 <99> BASe Corr

like this (Figure 1–6):



(History)

S=1 <99> BASe Corr

(Enter your command, please.) (Database)

CORR

Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit 11:39am

Figure 1–6 The BASe Corr screen

This means that in search number one (S=1) TRIP has found ninety-nine records (<99>) in database **Corr** using the order **BASe Corr**. Notice that TRIP automatically *expands* (spells out completely) in the History window any abbreviated commands that you supply (i.e. **Bas** becomes **BASe**). TRIP is also case-insensitive, so that any command may be typed in upper or lower case characters or any combination of these and yield the same result (as with **bas**, **BAS**, **Bas**, **bAs** or **baS**).

## Searching

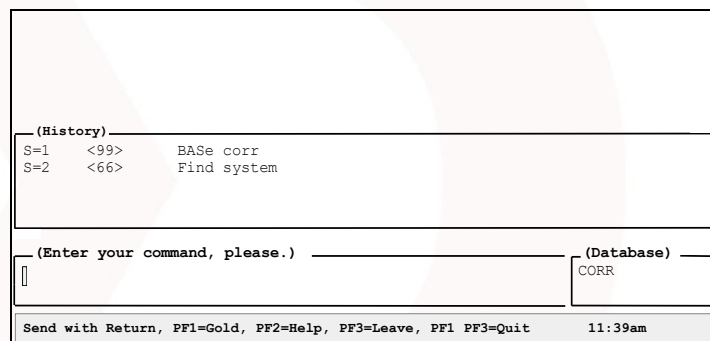
In the first search example we will be examining only those fields in **Corr** which contain text (data types **Text** and **Phrase**) and ignoring those that do not (data types **Date** and **Time**).

A TRIP search order or request must begin with the command **Find**, which can be shortened to **F**. Start by looking for a word that is almost certain to occur in **Corr**, say, any reference to computer systems (remember, it contains correspondence to and from a software company). Type the following order in the box where the cursor is, and press **↵**:

```
f system ↵
```

Your cursor is again returned to the Command window (as it will be after every **Find** command you issue) and in the Search History box the following information appears (Figure 1–7):

```
S=2 <66> Find system
```



The screenshot shows a terminal window with a search history box and a command input area. The search history box contains the following text:

(History)		
S=1	<99>	BASe corr
S=2	<66>	Find system

Below the search history box is a command input area with the prompt "(Enter your command, please.)" and a cursor. To the right of the command input area is a database selection box labeled "(Database)" with the value "CORR". At the bottom of the terminal window, there is a status bar with the text "Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit" and the time "11:39am".

**Figure 1–7** The first search screen

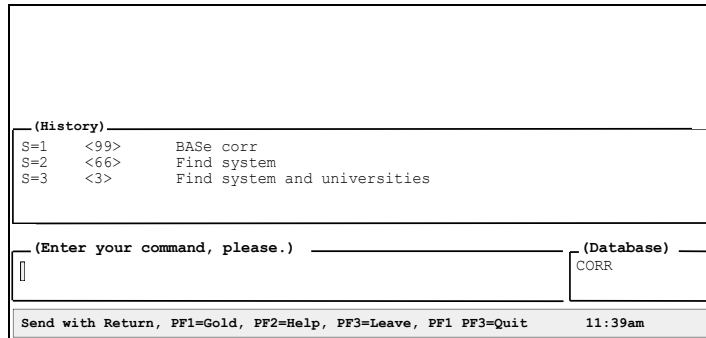
This tells you that a second search result has been formed (S=2), and that it consists of sixty-six records (<66>) which all contain the word 'system'. These are referred to as the *hit records*, and sixty-five is the *hit record count*.

Suppose you wish to narrow down the search by specifying that you are only looking for correspondence regarding computer systems and university applications. Type the order:

```
f system and universities ↵
```

A new line is added to the Search History (Figure 1–8):

```
S=3 <3> Find system AND universities
```



(History)		
S=1	<99>	BAsE corr
S=2	<66>	Find system
S=3	<3>	Find system and universities

(Enter your command, please.)

(Database)  
CORR

Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit 11:39am

**Figure 1–8 The second search screen**

This tells you that a third search result has been formed (S=3) and that it consists of only three records (<3>) that contain both 'system' and 'universities'. The word **AND** is a type of symbol known as a *logical operator* that combines one search condition with another in a search order.

It is possible that by using the term 'universities' (plural) in the last search order we may have missed some records which contain the word 'university' (singular). However, instead of writing both forms of the word in the order, we can use the truncation symbol # following the word stem, e.g. 'universit#', to find all relevant records.

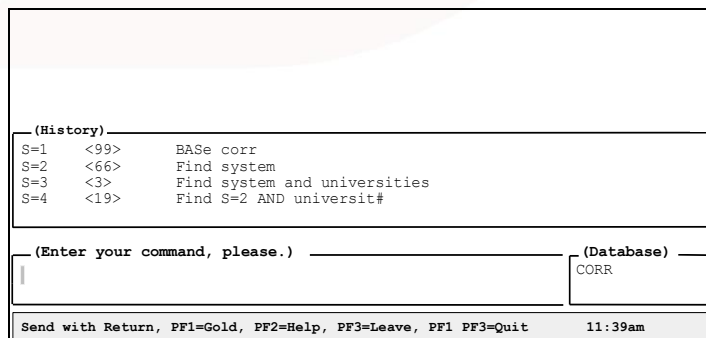
A search condition need not be a word, as in the above order, but can be a reference to an earlier search result as well. Try typing the order:

**f s=2 and universit# ↵**

This search uses the result of our previous search (number two, 'Find system'), to locate all correspondence containing both the word 'system' and words that begin with 'universit', whatever their suffix. This search finds eighteen records.

The Search History now shows the following (Figure 1–9):

**S=4 <19> Find S=2 AND universit#**



(History)		
S=1	<99>	BAsE corr
S=2	<66>	Find system
S=3	<3>	Find system and universities
S=4	<19>	Find S=2 AND universit#

(Enter your command, please.)

(Database)  
CORR

Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit 11:39am

**Figure 1–9 The third search screen**

As you can see, TRIP appends each search result to the previous one. The Search History window now contains these notations:

S=1	<99>	BAsE Corr
S=2	<66>	Find system

```
S=3      <3>      Find system AND universities
S=4      <19>     Find S=2 AND universit#
```

### Showing Search Results

To view the records found by the last search order, type the order **Show** (this can be shortened to **S**):

```
s ↵
```

TRIP opens a Show window where the History box was, and displays as much of the first record of your search result as the screen above the Command window will hold (Figure 1–10):

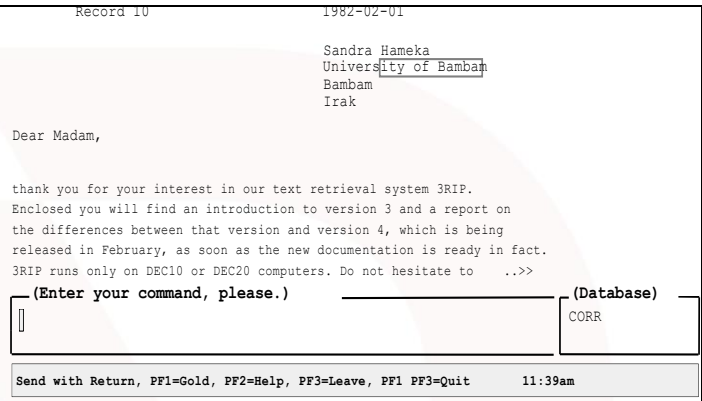


Figure 1–10 The Show window

Your cursor has again been returned to the Command window. If you are looking at your search results in the Show window and wish to see the list of **Find** commands you have used in the History window, use **<Gold><H>**. If you are viewing the contents of History and wish to read the results of a previous Show, use **<Gold><S>**.

A double chevron (**..>>**) above the Open Database box means ‘More text following...’. If you wish to continue reading, use one of the following keys or instructions (the shortest possible keystroke combination for each command is shown in bold):

Command	Shortest Form	Action
More one	M	Down (forward) screen (19 lines)
More 5	M 5	Down five lines
More -1 line	M -1	Up (backward) 1 line
<b>↓</b> Arrow		Down one screen

Back screen	B	Up (backward) one
Back 5	B 5	Up five lines
Back -1	B -1	Down one line
↑ Arrow screen		Up (backward) one
Next	N	To next record
Next -1	N -1	Up one record
Next 30 of	N 30	To thirtieth record
Next 999 output	N 999	To bottom of output
(where 999 is a number less than or equal to the number of records in the search result)		
Next -999 (where 999 is a number less than or equal to the number of records in the search result)	N -999	To top of output
<Gold><N>		To next record
Previous	PREV	To previous record
Previous 5	PREV 5	Up five records
Previous -1	PREV -1	Down one record
<Gold><P>		To previous record
Top record	T	To top of current record

**Figure 1–11** Screen output navigation commands

If you use your **More** or **<↓ Arrow>** (cursor down) keys, the second page of the record you were reading (and the beginning of the next record) will appear (Figure 1–11).

```

3RIP runs only on DEC10 or DEC20 computers. Do not hesitate to
write for more information, should you still have any interest in
the system.

Yours sincerely,
Jan Hultgren
Paralog AB
Box 2284
S-103 17 STOCKHOLM
Sverige

Record 12      1980-10-07
                Bill Brown
                IR Centre
                QLD 3211
                ..>>

(Enter your command, please.)      (Database)
CORR

Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit      11:39am

```

**Figure 1–12 More of the Show window**

There is always a default output format for a database—that is, the one used if no other is specified—and will be either the system format (called Dump) or a format designated by the Application Manager. The records are shown in **Corr**'s default output format, known as Format 1. This particular format shows all of the information contained in each record, including its record number or unique database identifier. All occurrences of 'universit#' in the last search order will be highlighted on the Show screen, making it easier to see the term you are looking for in context.

You may wish to continue searching after browsing the records you have found. As soon as you give a **Find** order the History box will reappear on the screen, displaying your earlier search results; otherwise **<Gold><H>** will restore the History area. You will not receive a notation from TRIP in Search History that you have performed a **Show**, as you did with **BASE** and **Find**.

If you wish to see the records of a search result other than the current one (the last search number shown in History), add the number of that result to your **Show** order, like this:

**s s=3 ↓**

Try this now.

## Printing Search Results

Suppose you wanted a hard copy (printed or paper) of the records you found with (S=3) above.

If you type the order **Print** in the Command box and press **↓**, you will receive this message below the Command window: "Print request no 1 stored." TRIP puts the records of the last search result into a queue, from which it will be output when you end your TRIP session. Other variations of the **Print** command are available and will be discussed later.

## Ending the Search Session

To end a search session and return to the Primary Option Menu, press <**Leave**>.

To end a search session and exit TRIP, type the order:

**stop ↵**

or use <**Gold**><**Leave**>. This ends both the search and the TRIP session, and returns you to the area from which your TRIP session was initiated.







## Chapter 2: Tutorial Two

This session gives examples of more refined searches, using date, time and number information as well as text within the database records. It shows how to make use of the database vocabulary, and how to change output formats for **Show** and **Print** orders. The tutorial concludes with some information about help and other messages from TRIP.

Log on to TRIP and choose **Search**, then **CCL Search** as in the first session. Open the database **Corr** by typing the order **BASe Corr** (or **bas corr** for short) on the command line. When TRIP shows the order

```
S=1 <99>  BASe Corr
```

in the Search History box, you can begin searching.

You may find it easier during the coming exercises to use each search statement as a template for the next. To do this, use the recall or previous order command, **<Gold><R>**. Edit as you normally would.

In the first session **AND** (the **AND operator**) was used to combine or add search conditions, or specify conditions where any records found must satisfy one condition **AND** the other. To specify alternative search conditions, or find records which must satisfy one condition **OR** the other (or both), use the **OR operator**.

For example, the **Find** order

```
f price or lease ↵
```

locates nineteen records that contain 'price', 'lease' or both 'price' and 'lease', as seen in the History window:

```
S=2 <19>  Find price OR lease
```

For the remainder of this chapter, each CCL example will have the corresponding Search History notation printed directly below the command illustrated.

You can search for one term **OR** the other, but not both, with the exclusive **OR** operator **XOR**:

```
f price xor lease ↵
```

```
S=3 <17>  Find price XOR lease
```

which looks for all records which contain either the word 'price' **OR** the word 'lease', but not both.

You can also request that a search term be excluded from records that contain another search term. This order,

```
f price not lease ↵
```

```
S=4 <14>  Find price NOT lease
```

finds fourteen records that contain 'price', but NOT 'lease'.

The effect of **AND**, **OR**, **XOR** and **NOT** is usually illustrated by Venn Diagrams, as shown below:

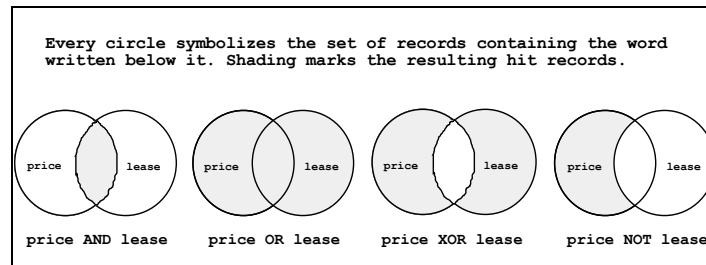


Figure 2-1 The Effect of AND, OR, XOR and NOT

If you have not already done so, type the four orders given previously, as the results are used in examples later in this section.

## Searching for Numbers, Dates and Times

As mentioned earlier, a record is made up of fields which have names and that contain different types of data. Normally the data types TExt and PHrase are the default—that is, are automatically searched—if no field names are specified in a search order (all the search orders of the first session found occurrences in the TExt and PHrase fields of the records). In addition to the TExt and PHrase fields, the **Corr** database has two fields of type **DATE** called **day** and **moddate**, and one of type **Time** called **modtime**.

The field we are interested in, **day**, contains the date each piece of correspondence was written. The system default format for dates is country-specific; however you may override this by choosing any one of seventeen possible date formats. Also, while doing these exercises you may receive the message “Date is no legal date” beneath the Command window, where *date* is the date format given in the sample command. Should this happen, refer to the section called ‘User Profile’ in Chapter Ten of this guide for information on finding your default date form, and if you wish, changing it.

Suppose you are interested only in those letters located by search result number two that are dated later than June 1984. Type the **Find** order:

```
f s=2 and day>1984-6-30 ↵
S=5 <12> Find S=2 AND day > 1984-06-30
```

The following **Find** order would give the same result:

```
f s=2 and day>=1984-7 ↵
S=6 <12> Find S=2 AND day >= 1984-07
```

Notice that TRIP automatically capitalizes logical search operators (**AND**, **OR**, **XOR**, **NOT**), expands dates (month 7 becomes 07) and inserts spaces in your commands where appropriate for readability.

These examples show that a full date is not always required. A mathematical search operator (equality sign [=], with or without a sign for greater than [>] or less than [<]) is placed between the field name and the value. Instead of greater than and less than, **FRom** (short form: **FR**) and **TO** may also be used to find values which are equal to, as well as greater or less than, the values specified.

Using **FRom**, the above order then becomes:

```
f s=2 and day=fr 1984-7 ↵
```

```
S=7 <12> Find S=2 AND day=FRom 1984-07
```

If you want only those letters written in July 1984 or later than September 1984, give the order:

```
f s=2 and day=1984-7 fr 1984-10 ↵
```

```
S=8 <9> Find S=2 AND day=1984-07 FRom 1984-10
```

Here you see that it is not necessary to be specific about days of the month in the query. TRIP calculates the number of days in the month specified in the search request (including allowances for leap years) and finds all correspondence for that month (here, July 1984 or on or after October 1984), saving many keystrokes.

The same operators (**FRom**, **TO**, **<**, **>**, and **=**) are used when searching in fields of type **NUMBER**, **INteger** and **Time**. A **NUMBER** field contains one or more numerical values, an **INteger** field contains whole numbers (positive and negative), and a **Time** field contains times of day expressed in hours, minutes, and seconds. The times in the **Time** fields, like the dates in the **DAte** fields, need not be fully specified. The full form of a time is **14:20:10** (written in twenty-four hour time) for ten seconds past 2:20PM.

## Searching in PHrase Fields

As mentioned earlier, searches are conducted only in fields containing data of type **Text** or **PHrase** (the default), unless there are instructions to do otherwise. Fields of type **Text** contain text consisting of paragraphs and sentences, while fields of type **PHrase** contain text of other kinds, such as short phrases, names, identifiers, and keywords. In the **Corr** database there are **PHrase** fields which contain information about the senders and recipients of the correspondence, which are repeated here for easy reference.

Field Name	Data Type	Contains	
<b>rname</b>	PHrase	Recipient:	name
<b>rcomp</b>	"	"	
	company		
<b>raddr</b>	"		
	address		
<b>rcountry</b>	"	"	
	country		
<b>sname</b>	"	Sender:	name
<b>scomp</b>	"	"	
	company		
<b>saddr</b>	"	"	
	address		
<b>scountry</b>	"	"	
	country		
<b>day</b>	DAte	Date of the message	
<b>cat</b>	PHrase	Type of	
	documentation		
<b>content</b>	TExT	Text of the message	
<b>modified</b>	PHrase	Modified by (TRIP	
	username)		
<b>moddate</b>	DAte	Modification: date	
<b>modtime</b>	Tlme	" time	
<b>modnote</b>	PHrase	Modifier's note	

Figure 2-2 The structure of database Corr

How do you find what you are looking for? If you are searching for correspondence to or from a person or a company named 'J Smith', but are not interested in correspondence that just mentions this name in the text of the correspondence, give the **Find** order:

```
f ph=j# smith ↵
S=9 <2> Find PHrase=j# smith
```

This order finds all terms in any **PHrase** field of the database where a word starting with 'J' is immediately followed by 'Smith', i.e. TRIP will look everywhere in the database except in the **day** and **moddate** (data type **DAte**), **content** (data type **TExT**) and **modtime** (data type **Tlme**) fields.

If you are interested only in correspondence where a 'J Smith' is the sender, you need only search the contents of the field **sname**, or sender's name. Give the order:

```
f sname=j# smith ↵
S=10 <1> Find sname=j# smith
```

You can also use the symbols <, >, <= and >= to search for *intervals* in **TExT** and **PHrase** fields. For example,

```
f rname > eric ↵
S=11 <70> Find rname > eric
```

finds all records in **Corr** where the contents of field **rname** fall alphabetically after (that is, having an alphanumeric value in the collating sequence greater than) 'Eric'.

To specify both upper and lower limits in a search, insert two full stops ( . . symbol) between the search terms. Try this query:

```
f rname=p . . pz  
S=12 <13> Find rname=p . . pz
```

*Note:*

*A single space both before and after the interval symbol ' . . ' is necessary.*

This is the equivalent of the statement 'Find all recipients' first names beginning with *p*'.

In a large database, even a search order such as the one above may result in too many hits to readily evaluate. In these cases it is a good idea to take a look at the database vocabulary first, in order to see how many records contain the word stem, the word, or the phrase that you have in mind before you formulate the search order. The next section shows how to do this, and illustrates the difference between **T**Ext and **P**Hrase fields.

## Displaying the Database Vocabulary

TRIP stores each single character (unigram), pair of characters (bigram), and character triplet (trigram), as well as each word or phrase as a unit in an *index* known as the data dictionary or vocabulary. The order **Display** (shortest form **D**) followed by a single term is used to view the database vocabulary for that word. Terms can then be selected from the vocabulary list that has been displayed and included in a **F**ind order.

You can produce a list of the vocabulary of selected fields by including a field name or **P**Hrase or **T**Ext in the **Display** order. If no field names are specified, the list of vocabulary terms is taken from all **T**Ext and **P**Hrase fields by default.

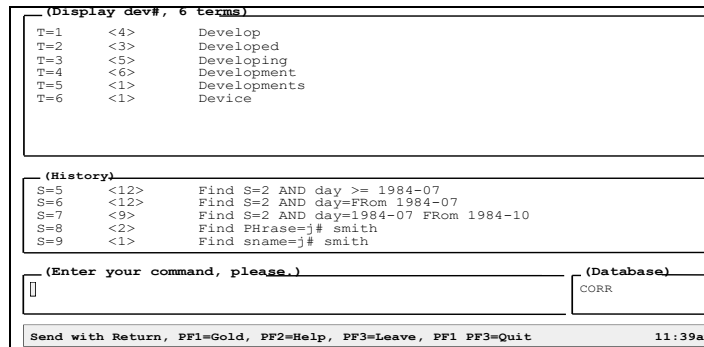
*Note:*

*These defaults are set at the start of a session, but new defaults may be defined at any point during the session. Refer to the 'Combination of Fields: Views' section in Chapter Five of this manual for more information.*

To see every term beginning with 'dev' in all **T**Ext and **P**Hrase fields, use the **Display** order:

```
d dev# ↵
```

The resulting **Display** window is shown:



The screenshot shows a terminal window with three main sections:

- (Display dev#, 6 terms)**: A list of terms with their counts in angle brackets.
 

T=1	<4>	Develop
T=2	<3>	Developed
T=3	<5>	Developing
T=4	<6>	Development
T=5	<1>	Developments
T=6	<1>	Device
- (History)**: A list of search commands and their results.
 

S=5	<12>	Find S=2 AND day >= 1984-07
S=6	<12>	Find S=2 AND day=FROM 1984-07
S=7	<9>	Find S=2 AND day=1984-07 FROM 1984-10
S=8	<2>	Find PPhrase=j# smith
S=9	<1>	Find sname=j# smith
- (Enter your command, please.)**: A text input field with a cursor.
- (Database)**: A dropdown menu currently showing "CORR".

At the bottom, a status bar reads: "Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit" and the time "11:39am".

**Figure 2-3 A Display list in the Display window**

The Display list has a title bar labelled '(Display dev#, 6 terms)', which shows the total number of terms which match the word stem given and the order used to generate it. As with **Show**, TRIP does not record your **Display** request in the History box as it did for **BASE** and **Find**.

Each of the terms found is labelled with a *term number* (T=1, T=2, etc.). The number of records which contain each term is shown in angle brackets.

To generate a search order using some of these terms, they must first be selected from the list. You may do this in one of two ways:

1. by including their term numbers directly in a Find order like this (we will use term numbers one through four in these examples):

**f t=3 ↵**

S=13 <5> Find "DEVELOPING"

TRIP writes the terms you have chosen in the History window.

You may also request TRIP to select more than one item in this way:

**f t=1 to 4 ↵**

S=14 <14> Find ("DEVELOP" OR "DEVELOPED" OR "DEVELOPING" OR "DEVELOPMENT")

or this:

**f t=1,2,3,4 ↵**

S=15 <14> Find ("DEVELOP" OR "DEVELOPED" OR "DEVELOPING" OR "DEVELOPMENT")

TRIP will compile a list for you from either of those commands.

2. by choosing individual terms with **Select Record** (shortest form **SE R**) and letting TRIP compose your Find command for you. Making sure you have the Display window open, begin by typing this order:

**se r ↵**

or use the **<Select>** key (pressing **<Select>** again deselects an item). TRIP places the cursor in the upper left corner of the Display box. Notice that,

once again, TRIP makes no notation of your action in Search History, but instead allows your **SElect** request to remain in the Command area.

Place your cursor to the left of the term number you wish to choose (in this case, T=1) with the <↑ **Arrow**> or

<↓ **Arrow**> keys and press the <**Select**> key. A right chevron or greater than symbol [>] appears beside the term you have selected, and the cursor automatically advances one line. Select term numbers two, three and four (T=2, T=3, T=4) also, and press ↵.

The **SElect** order builds the same search order as before:

```
S=16 <14> Find ("DEVELOP" OR "DEVELOPED" OR
"DEVELOPING" OR "DEVELOPMENT")
```

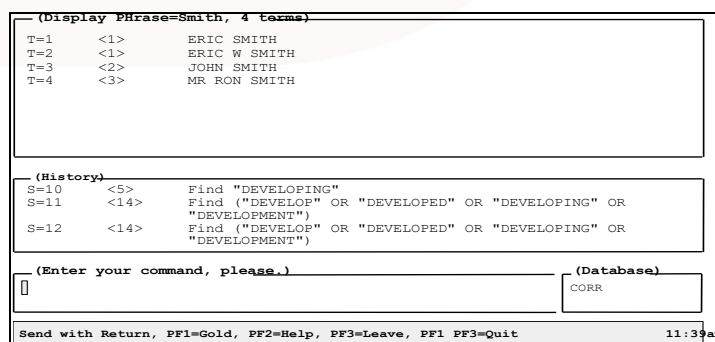
You can see that picking terms from a Display list is the same as giving a search order, with the terms combined by OR. Because some records contain more than one of the terms in the list, the number of records found will be less than the sum of the numbers of records for each term selected. If the list your request generates is longer than one screen can display, use the **More (M)** and **Back (B)** commands or the <↑ **Arrow**> and <↓ **Arrow**> keys to browse through the list. Refer to 'Moving Between Screens' in Chapter One of this manual for more information regarding screen navigation.

As shown by the preceding examples, a simple **Display** order presents a list of single words in alphabetical order. The remainder of this section covers the **Display** order in **PHrase** fields.

To search all the **PHrase** fields for the term 'smith', try the **Display PHrase** order:

```
d ph=smith ↵
```

The Display list, headed by the title bar '(Display PHrase=Smith, 4 terms)' looks like this:



```
(Display PHrase=Smith, 4 terms)
T=1 <1> ERIC SMITH
T=2 <1> ERIC W SMITH
T=3 <2> JOHN SMITH
T=4 <3> MR RON SMITH

(History)
S=10 <5> Find "DEVELOPING"
S=11 <14> Find ("DEVELOP" OR "DEVELOPED" OR "DEVELOPING" OR
"DEVELOPMENT")
S=12 <14> Find ("DEVELOP" OR "DEVELOPED" OR "DEVELOPING" OR
"DEVELOPMENT")

(Enter your command, please.)
(Database)
CORR

Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit 11:39am
```

Figure 2-4 A Display list from a PHrase field

The Display list contains both names, although the order contained only the last name. This points to an important difference between **TEText** and **PHrase** fields.

While **TEText** fields consist of text divided into paragraphs, sentences, and words, **PHrase** fields are divided into subfields. Each subfield contains a short text that is

treated as a unit, which in this case is the name of a person. When you request a display of the name 'Smith' in a **PHrase** field, TRIP shows the whole contents of all the subfields that contain the word 'Smith', first name, last name, middle initial, title or whatever has been entered.

Because short texts act as units, the **Display** order above could be more finely tuned by adding part of the first name to it:

```
d ph=j# smith ↵
```

TRIP shows only two records in the database in which 'Smith', first initial 'J', appears in a **PHrase** field. In this example 'John Smith' was the only phrase that matched the truncation pattern specified.

*Note:*

*A **Display** order containing more than one term can be used only with **PHrase** fields. Because the vocabularies of **Text** fields consist of single words, **Display** orders for **Text** or for a combination of both **Text** and **PHrase** fields can include only a single term.*

You can give a **Display** order for a single field as well, using the name of the field in your request instead of the field type:

```
d sname=smith ↵
```

This order gives a display of three Smiths ('Eric W', 'John' and 'Mr Ron') who sent letters included in this database. To find all contents of the field **sname**, use:

```
d sname=# ↵
```

TRIP displays thirty-eight phrases in the dictionary for this field.

## Output Formats (Reports)

One or more output formats can be predefined by the database manager when a database is created. How these look will depend on the database and the needs of the users.

The database **Corr** has two predefined output formats:

- Format 1 (the default format) displays all of the information contained in the record except the contents of the field **sname** (sender name), as that information is also part of the text of the correspondence.
- Format 2 gives only sender and recipient information.

Both formats show the record number.

Type the order:

```
f sname=j# smith ↵
```

```
S=17 <1> Find sname=j# smith
```

which happens to be search number seventeen (S=17) in this session.



Type the **Show** order:

**s s=17 ↵**

or as search number seventeen was the last search performed, simply:

**s ↵**

This will show your search results in the fuller format (Format 1, since this has been defined as the default and we did not specify otherwise), as shown in the following figures. Remember that the double chevron (..>>) above the Open Database area means 'More text to follow...'. Press the <↑ Arrow> and <↓ Arrow>, or <Next> and <Prev> keys to view the remainder of the text.

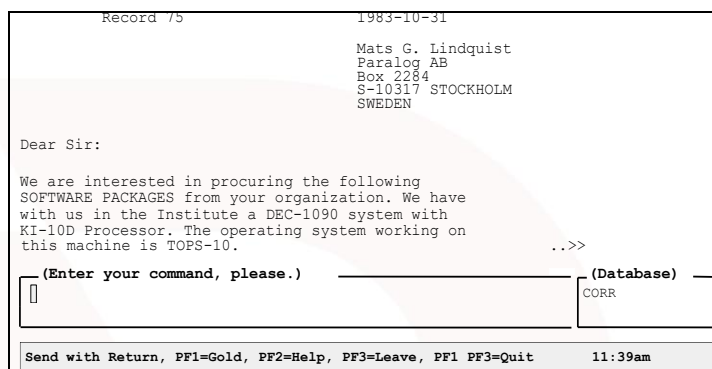


Figure 2-5 Format 1, screen one of three

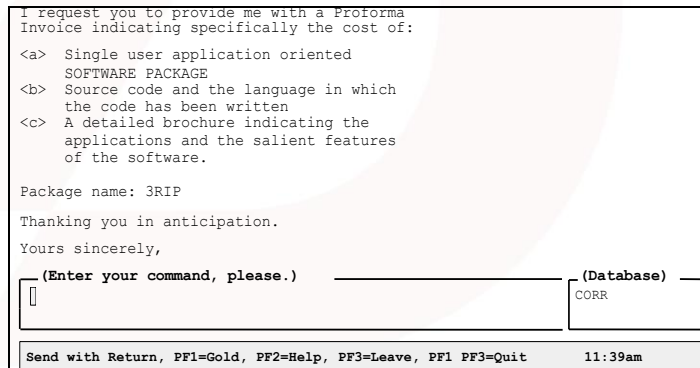


Figure 2-6 Format 1, screen two of three

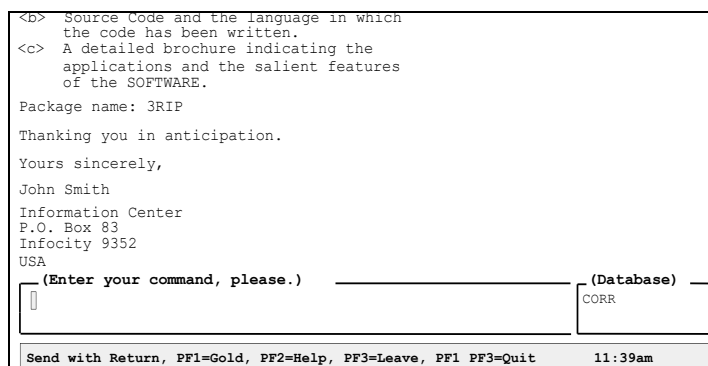


Figure 2-7 Format 1, screen three of three

Notice that the sender's name, 'John Smith' (which appears in the signature area below 'Yours sincerely'), is not highlighted. This is because the **Find** order is for a 'J Smith' in the field **sname**, and the default format (Format 1) does not show the content of that field. You can select the format in which your search results will appear using **Format** (short form: **F**) in a **Show** request. In the order:

```
s s=17 f=2 ↵
```

'f=' (for 'Format=') is followed by the name of the predefined format (Format 2), which has been created by the database manager to display only the name, company, address, country, date of message and record number fields. In this format the body or textual content of each letter will not be displayed.

If search number seventeen was the last search performed, just:

```
s f=2 ↵
```

will show the record in the shorter format.

The output of this **Show** order is given below:

Record 75		1983-10-31	
FROM	John Smith	TO	Mats G. Lindquist
	Information Center		Paralog AB
	P.O. Box 83		Box 2284
	Infocity 9352		S-103 17 STOCKHOLM
	USA		SWEDEN
(Enter your command, please.)		(Database)	
		CORR	
Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit 11:39am			

Figure 2–8 Format 2

A format requested in a **Show** order is volatile, and will be applied only to the search results displayed in that **Show** order. Every display thereafter will revert to whatever default format has been specified if there are no further instructions.

Since we are searching **PHrase** (and not **TExt**) fields, the name 'John Smith' is highlighted. To make this shorter format the default for future **Show** (and **Print**) orders, type the **DEfine** (short form: **DE**) order:

```
de f=2 ↵
```

TRIP acknowledges your request with "Format 2 is now the default format." This means that where future **Show** (and **Print**) orders do not specify the format, search results will now be shown in Format 2. This default remains in place until another **DEfine Format** order is given, a new database is opened, or the TRIP session is ended.

If some other format is required, a selected set of fields forming a *run-time format* (one which is defined when a **Show** or **Print** is requested) can be specified. This can be done either in a **DEfine** order to make it the default, or directly in a **Show** order. Once again, run-time formats requested in **Show** statements will remain in effect

only for that order. Subsequent **Show** (and **Print**) requests will revert to the default unless a new format is requested.

Suppose the only pieces of information you wish to see are the company name of the sender (field name **scomp**), the date (field **day**) and the content of the letter (**content**). To make this display the default for all subsequent **Show** and **Print** requests, give the **DEfine** order:

```
de f=scomp,day,content ↵
```

The message “New run-time default format defined.” appears below the Command box.

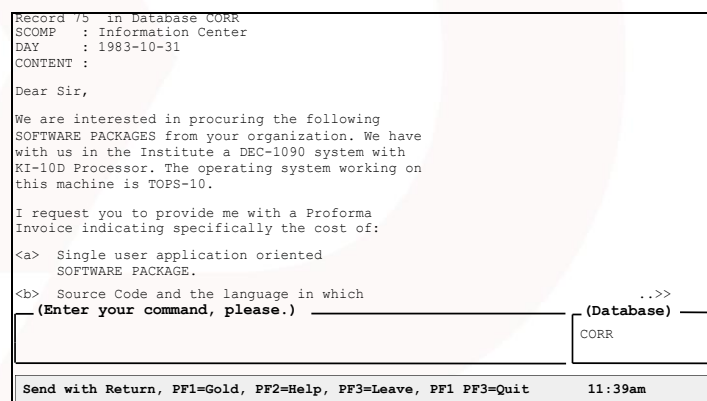
To show only the contents of the **scomp**, **day** and **content** fields for just *one* search (rather than all of the searches performed during this search session), specify the format in the **Show** order as follows:

```
s s=17 f=scomp,day,content ↵
```

or if you wish to format the results of the last search performed, just use:

```
s f=scomp,day,content ↵
```

The results are shown in list form in the following figures, with the contents of each field headed by the name of the field.



```
Record 75 in Database CORR
SCOMP : Information Center
DAY   : 1983-10-31
CONTENT :
Dear Sir,

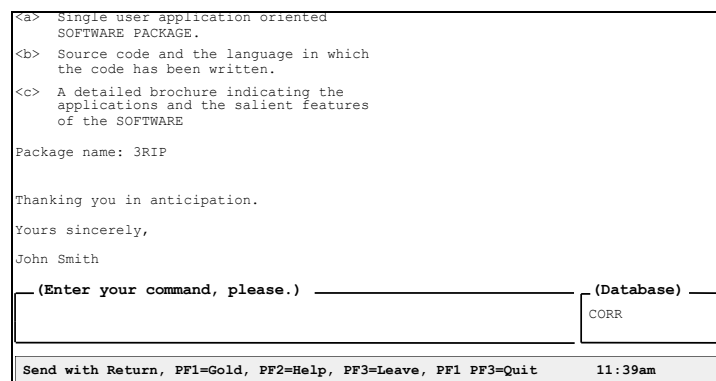
We are interested in procuring the following
SOFTWARE PACKAGES from your organization. We have
with us in the Institute a DEC-1090 system with
KI-10D Processor. The operating system working on
this machine is TOPS-10.

I request you to provide me with a Proforma
Invoice indicating specifically the cost of:

<a> Single user application oriented
      SOFTWARE PACKAGE.
<b> Source Code and the language in which
      (Enter your command, please.) ..>>
      (Database)
CORR

Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit 11:39am
```

Figure 2-9 A run-time format, screen one of two



```
<a> Single user application oriented
      SOFTWARE PACKAGE.
<b> Source code and the language in which
      the code has been written.
<c> A detailed brochure indicating the
      applications and the salient features
      of the SOFTWARE

Package name: 3RIP

Thanking you in anticipation.

Yours sincerely,

John Smith

(Enter your command, please.) (Database)
CORR

Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit 11:39am
```

Figure 2-10 A run-time format, screen two of two

If it is difficult to remember the field name, you can substitute the field type for the name in a command.

For example, **content** is the only **Text** (short form: **TE**) field in the **Corr** database. Try retyping the previous order, substituting data type **TE** for field name **content**:

```
s s=17 f=scomp,day,te ↵
```

This gives the same output as our previous **Show** request.

The field types can always be used in a format specification, alone or mixed with the names of individual fields. For review, they are (short forms are in parentheses):

**Text** (**TE**), **Phrase** (**PH**), **Date** (**DA**), **Time** (**TI**) and **Number** (**NU**).

Here is an order that contains all the field types:

```
s f=te,ph,da,ti,nu ↵
```

In this statement, **Number** includes fields of type **Number** and **Integer**. This shows all the fields of the records, headed by their field names, in the order in which they were specified. A **Show** order will be processed even if it contains a field type that is not represented in the database.

## Previous Orders and Commands

When you give orders or commands in the CCL Search window, they are saved in a *history list*. Pressing <Gold><R> (for **Recall**) once brings the last command entered into the Command box, where you can reuse it immediately (by pressing ↵) or edit and reuse it. Pressing <Gold><R> repeatedly moves you up the command stack, one command at a time (limit: nine recalls).

Before we continue with the tutorial, make a new search for senders of correspondence with the first or last name beginning with 'Sven', like this:

```
f sname=sven# ↵
```

```
S=18 <4> Find sname=sven#
```

Then define a new **Show** default to include only fields **sname** and **day**:

```
de f=sname,day ↵
```

## Sorting the Results

Quite often it is useful to be able to **Sort** (short form: **SOR**) the result records in a particular order before showing or printing them. You could, for example, sort a list of results alphabetically by name of sender, using the order:

```
s sor=sname ↵
```

Try this now. You should have one record containing 'Jan Svendsen', two with 'Orvar Svensson' and one with 'Ulf Svendsen', all from the most recent search performed (S=18).

To **Sort** on a date field, try this order with **day**:

```
s sor=day ↵
```

*Note:*

*Since a SORT can only be requested in a Show or Print order, TRIP does not note your action in the History area.*

The records are now sorted in normal chronological order from 1984-01-10 to 1984-10-30 (*ascending* or increasing order is the default).

It is also possible to sort on a combination of fields. Use S=18 once again and the following search order to sort all the records first by sender's name (in this case by the first name, since last, first, middle initial, title etc. are treated as a unit here), then by date:

```
s sor=sname,day ↵
```

To see a search result sorted in *descending* or reverse order, add the modifier **DEscending** (short form: **DES**) after the field name. In **Show** orders containing multiple **Sort** requests (as does the order above), the sorts will be *nested*.

For example, in the search above TRIP will sort first by **sname**, then by **day** within **sname**, and since there are multiple hit records only for 'Orvar Svensson', these are the only records that will *appear to be* sorted by date.

Try the following orders:

```
s sor=sname,day des ↵
```

```
s sor=sname des,day ↵
```

```
s sor=sname des,day des ↵
```

In the first example, **sname** is sorted in ascending order ('Jan', 'Orvar', 'Ulf') and **day** in descending (remember, within 'Orvar' only, 1984-06-15 to 1984-01-10). The second statement sorts **sname** in descending order ('Ulf', 'Orvar', 'Jan') and **day** ascending (in 'Orvar', 1984-01-10 to 1984-06-15). The last example sorts both **sname** and **day** in descending order.

As before, requests for descending sort order in **Show** and **Print** orders are volatile and must be respecified with each statement.

## Databases and Defaults: SStatus, BAsE and DEfine?

As we saw in the Introduction, if the order **BAsE** is given without a database name a list of all the databases that may be opened by you are shown, together with the description of their contents. This is useful when you cannot remember the name of a database, or cannot remember which of a number of databases contain the records you wish to search.

The command **Status** (short form: **ST**) followed by the name of a database gives general information about that database. If a database is already open, the command **Status** alone gives the same information about the open database. If you have more than one database open at any one time, a **ST ↵** order will present status information for each open database, in alphabetical order by database name.

The order:

**st corr ↵**

or if **Corr** is already open (as now), simply

**st ↵**

presents screens like the following:

```
(st)
Data base: CORR                      Design created: 1992-10-19   10:03:01
Owner:      SYSTEM                   Design revised: 1993-05-23  22:41:12
Number of records: 99                Last update:    1992-10-19   14:30:15
                                      Last index:     1993-05-24    8:47:25

Description: A collection of slightly edited letters and telexes to and from
Paralog

Default format:      1
Default entry form:   FULL
Formats available:    1, 2
Entry forms available: 1, FULL

Files: TRIP$DEMO:CORR.BAF
       TRIP$DEMO:CORR.BIF
       TRIP$DEMO:CORR.VIF
                                     ..>>

(Enter your command, please.) _____ (Database) _____
CORR

Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit 11:39am
```

Figure 2–11 Status Corr, screen one of three

```
(st)
TRIP$DEMO:CORR.VIF

Submit queue: TDBSSBATCH
Notify on completion: Y
Print log file: N
Keep log file: Y

Field name      No  Type  Part  Mand  Indx  Orig  Cost  Comment
-----
RNAME           1  PHRASE  N    N    Y    N    0    Recipient: name
RCOMP           2  PHRASE  N    N    Y    N    0    Recipient: company
RADDR           3  PHRASE  N    N    Y    N    0    Recipient: address
RCOUNTRY        4  PHRASE  N    N    Y    N    0    Recipient: country
SNAME           5  PHRASE  N    N    Y    N    0    Sender: name
SCOMP           6  PHRASE  N    N    Y    N    0    Sender: company
SADDR           7  PHRASE  N    N    Y    N    0    Sender: address
SCOUNTRY        8  PHRASE  N    N    Y    N    0    Sender: country ..>>

(Enter your command, please.) _____ (Database) _____
CORR

Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit 11:39am
```

Figure 2–12 Status Corr, screen two of three

```
(st)
RNAME           1  PHRASE  N    N    Y    N    0    Recipient: name
RCOMP           2  PHRASE  N    N    Y    N    0    Recipient: company
RADDR           3  PHRASE  N    N    Y    N    0    Recipient: address
RCOUNTRY        4  PHRASE  N    N    Y    N    0    Recipient: country
SNAME           5  PHRASE  N    N    Y    N    0    Sender: name
SCOMP           6  PHRASE  N    N    Y    N    0    Sender: company
SADDR           7  PHRASE  N    N    Y    N    0    Sender: address
SCOUNTRY        8  PHRASE  N    N    Y    N    0    Sender: country
DAY             9  DATE    N    Y    Y    N    0    Date of message
CAT            10  PHRASE  N    N    Y    N    0    Type of message
CONTENT         11  TEXT    N    N    Y    Y    0    Text of message
MODIFIED        12  PHRASE  N    N    Y    N    0    Modified By (TRIP
                               username)
MODDATE         13  DATE    N    N    Y    N    0    Modification Date
MODTIME         14  TIME    N    N    N    N    0    Modification Time
MODNOTE         15  PHRASE  N    N    Y    N    0    Modifier's Note

(Enter your command, please.) _____ (Database) _____
CORR

Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit 11:39am
```

Figure 2–13 Status Corr, screen three of three

Reading from left to right on the first **Status** screen, the following information is available (dates and times will differ with each installation):

- the database name (**Corr**)
- the creation date (October 19, 1992) and time (10:03AM)
- the owner/creator (System)
- the date and time of design revision (May 23, 1993, 10:41PM)
- the number of indexed records in the database (99)
- the dates and times when new material was last added to the database ('Last update: October 19, 1992, 2:20PM') and made searchable ('Last index: May 24, 1993, 8:47AM')
- a brief description of the database contents
- a 'forms and formats' list giving the names of the default format, default entry form and other output formats and entry forms that are available
- a list of TRIP filenames used by the database manager for this database (this may continue onto the next screen).
- The second and third **Status** screens present:
- some miscellaneous information used by the application manager
- a field list containing:
- the name, field number and data type of each field
- columns labeled 'Part', 'Mand', 'Indx', 'Orig', 'Cost' and 'Comment':
- 'Y' or Yes in the 'Part' column indicates that field possesses a special bi-level field structure called a *part field* (see Chapter Eight, 'Head And Part Records' in this guide for more information)
- 'Y' or Yes in 'Mand' indicates that this field is a '*Mand*'atory field, that is, never empty in a record
- 'Y' or Yes in the 'Indx' column indicates that the field is indexed. It is not possible to search in or display the contents of a field which contains 'N' in 'Indx' (that is, not indexed), although the field contents can be shown if the record is found by searching in other fields
- 'Orig' (short for '*Orig*'inal Layout) specifies whether or not TRIP will store the information in its original form (complete with tabs, spaces and other formatting instructions) rather than in compressed form
- 'Y' or Yes in the 'Cost' area indicates an expense or monetary outlay when one **Shows** or **Prints** the contents of this field (there is, however, no charge for searching these fields). You can view a summary of any charges you

have incurred during any particular search session using the command  
**Show COST ↵**

- 'Comment' contains a brief description of the field itself.

We have already seen that the order **DEfine Format** can be used to define the default output format. The **DEfine** command can also be used to define other defaults. To view a list of system defaults, as well as new defaults that may have already been specified, use the **DEfine?** (short form: **DE?**) order:

**de? ↵**

A possible list of defaults and their explanations is shown in the accompanying table. For more information regarding the various **DEfine** commands, refer to the *CCL Command Reference*.

DEfine? Term	Meaning
Highlight = All	All hit terms in output are highlighted
No focus	Full hit information is shown in output
No merge	Records will be sorted within each database
No reverse	Records shown in ascending order
Hold	Print orders will be assigned to a queue
Save base	BASe orders will be saved when Save order is given
Tstamp Update	A timestamp search of records, excluding updated records, is enabled
No stop word	No stop words are defined for the CCL <b>Fel! Hittar inte referenskälla.</b> command
Display no orig	DISPLAY lists will use original forms of the terms
Display freq = merge	Merging across databases of terms in frequency restricted term lists is enabled
Find = no Fuzz	Find command will not behave as if it were the Fuzz command
Page	In TTY (TeleTYpe) mode, screen output is non-continuous, displaying one page of data at a time. Use More to scroll to next screen
DEfine? Term	Meaning
FIND max = no limit	No limit on the number of search terms allowed in any individual query



+ max = no limit	No limit on the number of search terms that can be joined by + in any one query
DISPLAY max = 1000	Can display up to and including 1000 terms per display order
SORT max = 1000	Can sort up to and including 1000 records per search request
MAP max = 1000	Can search up to and including 1000 terms using a 'virtual field'
DELETE max = 1000	The global record delete has a maximum value of 1000 defined
PRINT max = No limit	Can print any number records at any one time
AND = AND.E	The logical AND denotes 'AND within the same record entity' while searching in records that contain head/part records
MASK = '#: !&'	Four masking symbols are currently available for use
TIMEFORM = 1	Format for Time fields is hh:mm:ss
CENTURY MIN = 1953	If the two digits a user has supplied for the year are 53 or greater, then 1900 will be added to the year, otherwise 2000 will be added
FUZZ = 75, 5, 2, 1	Fuzzy searching will be according to the listed parameters.
ABOUT = 50, No Highlight	Precision in matching is 50% and hit highlighting is off for non-Boolean searching
VIEW=Text, PHrase	Only the information stored in Text and PHrase fields will be searched
KEY	No function keys are defined as soft function keys or macro keys

**Figure 2-14**

**List of DEfine defaults**

## Error Messages and Help

If you give an order that TRIP cannot accept or is unable to interpret, an error message will appear on the bottom line of the screen beneath the Command window, and the erroneous order will be left in the Command box for correction or deletion.

Other kinds of messages from TRIP, such as those confirming that a new default format is set or that some other action has taken place that does not lead to an immediately visible result, appear here as well.

TRIP provides help on the use of all of its commands and their modifiers and operators, and is accessed by giving a **Help** (short form: **H**) order via the CCL line, or by pressing the keypad **<PF2>** key. Although the shortest form of many TRIP commands contains only one character, **Help** requires you to type at least the first three characters of the term with which you need assistance.

For **Help** on the **Find** command, use:

```
h fin ↵
```

For **Help** on the **Sort** order,

```
h sor ↵
```

To view the complete list of commands for which TRIP furnishes help, use general **Help**,

```
h ↵
```

To exit **Help**, enter another command or press **<Leave>**.

*Note:*

*If <PF2> is pressed to invoke help text following an operator error (e.g. attempting to call an invalid procedure), the message, "Sorry, no help text available yet" will be displayed. To view help text immediately after an operator error, use the CCL **Help** command.*

## Ending a Search Session

You will need the searches stored in Search History for the next tutorial. To end your TRIP session from the command line and save your search results, use **STOP SAve** (short form: **STOP SA**) now:

```
stop sa ↵
```

To exit CCL without saving your search results, use **STOP** (shortest form):

```
stop ↵
```

Use **<Gold><Leave>** to exit TRIP from any area.

Each of these **STOP** orders ends *both* your CCL search session and your current TRIP session.

If you are in the Primary Option Menu and would like to save some or all of your History entries, highlight **Quit** and press ↵ or

**<↓ Arrow>**. Your cursor will be positioned to the left of **Save and end**. Press ↵ to store your results and exit TRIP.

The next time you start a search session, the searches you made during this one will be shown in Search History and you can continue searching where you left off.

To exit without saving from the Primary Option Menu, **<↓ Arrow>** to the next option, **End Session**, and press ↵.

To escape the **Quit** option box and return to the Primary Option Menu, choose **<Leave>** or use the **<↑ Arrow>** key.





## Chapter 3: Tutorial Three

This third search session shows how to search for records which exclude certain terms, how to search using record numbers, and how searches may be combined with previous searches.

It shows how to focus in on hit terms, and skip from one hit to the next. It also shows how to change databases during a search session, how to save a search order and rerun it, and how to delete searches.

It ends by giving more examples of the truncation of words and of *masking characters*, symbols that stand for some unknown letter or letters.

We saved all searches and ended the last session by giving the order **STOP SAve**, so we will begin this tutorial with the search orders which have been stored in CCL History from that session.

Log on to TRIP now, and choose the **CCL Search** option within **Search**. You should have these searches in your History window (use the <↑ Arrow> and <↓ Arrow> keys to scroll the list of CCL search results):

S=1	<99>	BASe corr
S=2	<19>	Find price OR lease
S=3	<17>	Find price XOR lease
S=4	<14>	Find price NOT lease
S=5	<12>	Find S=2 AND day > 1984-06-30
S=6	<12>	Find S=2 AND day >= 1984-07
S=7	<12>	Find S=2 AND day=FRom 1984-07
S=8	<9>	Find S=2 AND day=1984-07 From 1984-10
S=9	<2>	Find PHrase=j# smith
S=10	<1>	Find SNAME=j# smith
S=11	<70>	Find rname > eric
S=12	<13>	Find rname=p .. pz
S=13	<5>	Find "DEVELOPING"
S=14	<14>	Find ("DEVELOP" OR "DEVELOPED" OR "DEVELOPING" OR "DEVELOPMENT")
S=15	<14>	Find ("DEVELOP" OR "DEVELOPED" OR "DEVELOPING" OR "DEVELOPMENT")

```
S=16      <14>      Find ("DEVELOP" OR "DEVELOPED"  
OR                                                "DEVELOPING" OR  
"DEVELOPMENT")  
  
S=17      <1>       Find sname=j# smith  
  
S=18      <4>       Find sname=sven#
```

If not, type them in now.

## Combining With the Latest Search Result

It is a general rule in TRIP that the latest search result performed is the default (that is, the search result acted upon) when no specific search result is given. This was demonstrated in the last session using the **Show** order. If you type the order:

```
f and new ↵
```

TRIP will use the result of the last search stored in History (S=18) to find all records where the first or last name of any sender begins with 'sven' and which contain the term 'new'. This example appears in the search history as:

```
S=19 <3> Find S=18 AND new
```

This is because the modifier **AND** must have a search term on either side of it, so TRIP inserts a reference to the latest search result. Another way of referring to the latest search is S=0, so the search just completed could be rewritten in this way:

```
f s=0 and new ↵
```

```
S=20 <3> Find S=19 AND new
```

This example, as well as every other example in this chapter, shows the Search History notation immediately following each CCL order.

## Deleting Searches

Any search result can be removed, if, for example, it produced no useful results and is cluttering the History window. A search result is removed using the command **DElete** (short form: **DEL**), and as the latest result is always the default, it can be removed simply by giving the order:

```
del ↵
```

Type that order now.

Search result number twenty (S=20) is deleted, and result number nineteen (S=19) becomes the last or most recent result.

Repeat **del** ↵ again to remove search result nineteen.

This type of **DElete** order affects only search results, not the records in the database itself. Special privileges are required to make changes in the database, and the syntax of that **DElete** order is quite different.

*Note:*

*Deleting searches from the middle of the Search History will not cause all of the remaining searches to be renumbered!*

## ‘Negative’ Searches

This section covers the use of the **NOT** modifier, which finds all the records in the database that exclude (that is, do not contain) a specific term.

**NOT** works similarly to **AND**, but may lead to some search results one might not ordinarily expect. Enter the order:

```
f not new ↵  
S=19 <1> Find S=18 NOT new
```

TRIP treats this order in the same way as the **AND** order discussed previously, finding all records containing ‘sven#’ in **sname** but *which do not contain* ‘new’.

You might ordinarily expect this order to find every record in the database which does not contain the word ‘new’. However, TRIP assumes that you wish to look for ‘new’ *only in the results of the last search performed*, therefore this order searches only the records found by S=18.

Using another example, to find all of the correspondence in **Corr** that was not sent by Paralog (about half of the records in the database), search the field containing the company name (**scomp**) like this:

```
f all not scomp=paralog ↵  
S=20 <37> Find ALL NOT scomp=paralog
```

TRIP interprets this search order as ‘find ALL the records *except* (that is, **NOT**) those where the term ‘paralog’ appears in the field **scomp**’. Since ALL was included in the command, TRIP does not limit the search to the last search result obtained (S=19).

## Searching for Empty/Non-Empty Fields

In certain circumstances, you may wish to find all of the records for which a certain field is empty, or conversely, the records for which a particular field contains some terms.

There is a field named **cat** (Category) in the **Corr** database that is of data type **PHrase**. Give the order:

```
f cat=# ↵  
S=21 <3> Find cat=#
```

to find all records (three hits) containing some value in **cat** (that is, where **cat** is not empty).

To search for records where the field **cat** is empty, use the order:

```
f cat="" ↵
```

```
S=22 <96> Find cat=""
```

*Note:*

*There is no space between the double quotes.*

Ninety-six records have no data in **cat**.

The two orders are interpreted by TRIP as follows:

- find all records where **cat** contains # (meaning anything, but not nothing)
- find all records where **cat** contains "" (the empty string, meaning nothing).

## Searching Using Record Numbers

Every record in a database has a *record number* (short form: **R**) or unique record identifier, which is never duplicated or reused (in the case of record deletion) in that database. These can be used for searching in this manner:

```
f r=fr 49 ↵
```

```
S=23 <51> Find r=FRom 49
```

TRIP interprets this as 'find all records with a record number greater than or equal to 49'.

If we then follow this with:

```
f not scomp=paralog ↵
```

```
S=24 <17> Find S=23 NOT scomp=paralog
```

TRIP will assume that we wish to base this search upon the last search result (S=23) obtained.

This finds all the records between (and including) record numbers forty-nine and ninety-nine (S=23) which do not have the term 'paralog' in the field **scomp** (S=24).

We can also combine record numbers with other search conditions in **Find** statements such as this:

```
f r=fr 49 not scomp=paralog ↵
```

```
S=25 <17> Find (r=FRom 49) NOT scomp=paralog
```

which also finds all the records numbered forty-nine and above that do not have the term 'paralog' in the field **scomp**.

## FOcus - Showing Only Hits in Records

The **FOcus** modifier (short form: **FO**) is used after the **Show** command to restrict the output of the records hit. In **TExt** fields, only the paragraph in which the hit or hits occur is displayed. This is especially useful in long records, where you can move directly to the paragraphs containing the subject matter of interest.

To illustrate, we will use the last technique described to find all of the occurrences of the word 'is' in record numbers forty-nine and fifty:



```
f r=49,50 and is ↵  
S=26 <2> Find (r=49, 50) AND is
```

*Note:*

*The comma here is interpreted as **OR**.*

To see *only* the first paragraph containing a hit (with no surrounding text), use **Show FOCUS** (short form: **S FO**):

```
s fo ↵
```

TRIP gives you some information at the top of the **Show** screen that is designed to help orient you within your search result:

- the record number within the hit record count (Record 1 of 2)
- the name of the database you are currently searching (**Corr**)
- the record number of the record you are examining in the database (.R=49)
- and the field name containing your search target (**content**).

Below that will be printed the portion of the hit record containing the search term you are interested in, without any extraneous information to distract you. You may scroll the records as with any other output.

The difference between **Show FOCUS** and **Show Format=fieldname** (as discussed in Tutorial Two) is that when you **FOCUS** a hit record, you are merely blanking out or hiding extraneous information, both within and outside the field in question. This leaves large gaps or blank spaces in the screen display in the process. When you **Format** a hit, however, you are actually displaying only the fields you are interested in, and all available information within these fields will be shown.

Once you have focused on the hit paragraph, you can return the hit record to its original form and view the paragraph in context by using the **Expand** feature (short form: **E**) to restore the information around the hit. To **Expand** the text, type

```
e ↵
```

or use **<Gold><X>**.

All text which normally surrounds the hit paragraph reappears, and the screens of the **Show** window once again display the entire record. You can scroll up and down through the screen output in the usual way using the arrow keys and screen movement commands. However, once the hit record has been **Expanded**, you are essentially 'trapped' within this record. The focused hit which you just expanded remains in the **Show** window unless you repeat the **Show FOCUS** order using a different search result (for example, **s fo s=12**). You can also use the CCL command **Continue** (short form: **C**) which enables you to see the remainder of your records.

Try this now:

**c ↵**

TRIP displays the next focused hit. This command can be repeated any number of times after either a **FOcus** or an **Expand** until you have browsed all the paragraphs that contain hits.

If, while scrolling through the output after giving the **Expand** command, you lose your place and wish to return to the focused hit you were just browsing, you can move back to it using the order **Continue Show ↵** (short form: **C S**). Try this now.

All the hits in this example were found in paragraphs of the field **content**, which is of type **TExt**. If the hits are made in fields of any other type (**PHrase**, **DAte**, **TIme**, **NUmber** or **INteger**), it is the content of each subfield, rather than each paragraph, which is shown.

For example, try typing the search order:

**f saddr=5# ↵**

S=27 <3> Find saddr=5#

where we are looking for any term in the Sender Address field beginning with '5'.

Now **FOcus** the hits:

**s fo ↵**

TRIP prints only the line of the address (the subfield) in which a leading '5' was found (P.O. Box **53**, Edf Caramba Apt **59C**, **53** Eden Street).

## Saving a Search Order

When ending a search session or changing to another database, you may want to keep one or more of the search orders you have made in order to reproduce the result in a later session. This is done by saving a search order and giving it a name (maximum length, sixteen alphanumeric characters, including underscore).

At this point your search history should contain these search results:

S=1	<99>	BASe Corr
S=2	<19>	Find price OR lease
S=3	<17>	Find price XOR lease
S=4	<14>	Find price NOT lease
S=5	<12>	Find S=2 AND day > 1984-06-30
S=6	<12>	Find S=2 AND day >= 1984-07
S=7	<12>	Find S=2 AND day=FRom 1984-07
S=8	<9>	Find S=2 AND day=1984-07 FRom 1984-10
S=9	<2>	Find PHrase=j# smith
S=10	<1>	Find sname=j# smith

```

S=11      <70>      Find rname > eric
S=12      <13>      Find rname=p .. pz
S=13      <5>       Find "DEVELOPING"
S=14      <14>      Find ("DEVELOP" OR "DEVELOPED"
OR                                     "DEVELOPING" OR
"DEVELOPMENT")
S=15      <14>      Find ("DEVELOP" OR "DEVELOPED"
OR                                     "DEVELOPING" OR
"DEVELOPMENT")
S=16      <14>      Find ("DEVELOP" OR "DEVELOPED"
OR                                     "DEVELOPING" OR
"DEVELOPMENT")
S=17      <1>       Find sname=j# smith
S=18      <4>       Find sname=sven#
S=19      <1>       Find S=18 NOT new
S=20      <37>      Find ALL NOT scomp=paralog
S=21      <3>       Find cat=#
S=22      <96>      Find cat=""
S=23      <51>      Find r=FRom 49
S=24      <17>      Find S=23 NOT scomp=paralog
S=25      <17>      Find (r=FRom 49) NOT
scomp=paralog
S=26      <2>       Find (r=49, 50) AND is
S=27      <3>       Find saddr=5#

```

In order to **SAve** (short form: **SA**) your last search result and the statements that produced it, use the command:

```
sa last_search ↵
```

where 'Last\_Search' is a TRIP *procedure* or miniature program containing the search result. You will receive the message, 'Search 27 is saved as LAST\_SEARCH'.

To **SAve** the CCL commands that produced search result number nineteen under the name 'Sven\_Not\_New', give the order:

```
sa s=19 sven_not_new ↵
```

TRIP responds with the message, "Search 19 is saved as SVEN\_NOT\_NEW".

TRIP saves just enough of the search history to reproduce the result; that is, it saves all of the searches on which the result depends, but none of the others. Since only three statements were necessary to produce the single record found by search number nineteen, 'Sven\_Not\_New' will contain only these statements:

```
S=1          <99>      BAsE corr
S=18        <4> Find  sname=sven#
S=19        <1> Find  S=18 NOT new
```

To produce this search result again during another session, simply type the name of the search sequence you have saved. Run 'Sven\_Not\_New' on the CCL Command line now using:

```
sven_not_new ↵
```

As TRIP executes the saved commands, each will appear very briefly in sequential order in the Command window. Each result will be recorded in the History box in the usual way.

TRIP can also save an entire search history. To save *all* of the searches currently in your History window under the name 'Third\_Session', type:

```
sa s=1 to 27 third_session ↵
```

TRIP confirms your request with the message "Specified searches are saved as THIRD\_SESSION".

*Note:*

*TRIP actually saves the search order as a private **PRocedure**. If required, you can edit and modify it to produce a different search result. See Chapter Eleven, 'User Procedures' of this manual for more information.*

If you would like to save a series of CCL commands without their corresponding **BASe** order(s), use the **DEfine SAve** (short form: **DE SA**) order:

```
de sa no bas ↵
```

The message is "Database search not included in saved searches." **BASe** commands will not be included in your saved search procedures until either you end your TRIP session or you use the command

```
de sa bas ↵
```

after which you will receive the message "Database search included in saved searches."

If you no longer need a saved search order, you can delete it using **DElete SAve** (short form: **DEL SA**). **DElete** 'Sven\_Not\_New' in this manner:

```
del sa sven_not_new ↵
```

TRIP gives this message: "Procedure SVEN\_NOT\_NEW deleted."

You can also use the command **DElete PRocedure** (short form: **DEL PR**). Discard 'Third\_Session' now with this method:

```
del pr=third_session ↵
```

TRIP responds with "Procedure THIRD\_SESSION deleted."

## Deleting Searches, Changing Databases

You can delete all of the searches in your current History box with the **DElete Search** (short form: **DEL S**) order:

```
del s=all ↵
```

To clear History for the next exercises, give this order now.

TRIP responds with "All sets deleted." To prevent confusion, all subsequent searches will then be numbered from one onward, unless you perform another **DElete**.

You may wish to discard all previous searches routinely when opening a new database, as earlier searches for a different database are unlikely to be useful. However, preceding searches may be helpful if the same database were reopened later in the same session.

Use the **BASe** command again when you are ready to open another database. **BASe** simultaneously opens the new database(s) and closes all database(s) previously in use.

The next examples are taken from another demonstration database called **Alice**. This database contains portions of Lewis Carroll's books 'Alice in Wonderland' and 'Through the Looking-Glass'—stories concerning a small girl who falls down a rabbit hole, steps through a drawing-room mirror and experiences unusual adventures with a variety of nonsensical characters.

Each record in the **Alice** database consists of a piece of the text, the name and number of the chapter from which the text is taken, and the names of the persons mentioned in the text.

Open this database now by giving the order:

```
bas alice ↵
S=1 <475> BASE alice ↵
```

## Status Revisited - On Screen and In Print

In Tutorial Two we discussed browsing the organization of a database before searching to become familiar with certain of its attributes, such as the size of the database (number of searchable records) and the field names, data types and formats that are available. Ask to see this information for database **Alice** now using **Status**:

```
st ↵
```

The screens shown below will appear (remember that dates and times of database creation and revision are unique to every installation):

(st)		
Data base: ALICE	Design created: 1992-10-19	18:04:02
Owner: SYSTEM	Design revised: 1993-05-23	22:41:47
Number of records: 475	Last update: 1987-06-18	8:43:44
	Last index: 1993-05-24	8:50:29
Description: Text from 'Alice in Wonderland' and 'Through the Looking-Glass' by Lewis Carroll		
Default format: FULL		
Formats available: 1, 2, SHORT, FULL		
Files: TRIP\$DEMO:ALICE.BAF TRIP\$DEMO:ALICE.BIF TRIP\$DEMO:ALICE.VIF		
Submit queue: TDBS\$BATCH	...>>	
(Enter your command, please.)		(Database) ALICE
Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit 11:39am		

Figure 3-1 Status order for Alice, screen one of two

```
(st)
Submit queue:      TDBSS$BATCH
Notify on completion: Y
Print log file:    N
Keep log file:     Y

Field name      No  Type  Part  Mand  Indx  Orig  Cost  Comment
-----
CHAPTRN         1  INTEGER N    Y    Y    N    0    Chapter number
CHAPTER         2  PHRASE N    Y    Y    N    0    Chapter heading
PERSON          3  PHRASE N    N    Y    N    0    Persons acting in the text
SPEAKER         4  PHRASE N    N    Y    N    0    Persons speaking in the
text
TXT             5  TEXT   N    N    Y    N    0    Text of the chapter
VERSE          6  TEXT   N    N    N    N    0    Text of the verse
TXT2           7  TEXT   N    N    Y    N    0    Text appearing after the
verse

(Enter your command, please) (Database: Alice)

Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit 11:39am
```

Figure 3–2 STatus order for Alice, screen two of two

Familiarize yourself with the field names and data types in this database. There are three **Text** fields in **Alice**, **txt**, **txt2** and **verse**. The field **verse** contains the poems of the two books; however, the text is not indexed and thus cannot be searched. **Txt** contains the general text, while **txt2** includes text that follows a poem in a record. There are also two ‘Mandatory’ fields in every record in this database, the name (**chapter**) and number (**chaptnr**) of each chapter.

You can refer to the field name list at any point during the following exercises using

```
st alice ↵
```

## Searching for a Whole Phrase

We have mentioned before that the purpose of a **PHrase** field is to store *phrases*, collections of words which naturally belong together and which usually have a meaning over and above the sum of their parts (for example, the phrases ‘The Mad Hatter’ and ‘The Queen of Hearts’).

A **PHrase** field can hold many individual phrases and usually stores them in subfields, each of which has a maximum length of 255 characters.

In order to match a search expression to the whole content (all words) of a subfield of a **PHrase** field, place single quotation marks around the expression in the search order.

*Note:*

*Limiting an entire phrase is the only time single quotation marks are used in TRIP.  
In all other cases, double quotation marks are preferable.*

Remember that the field **person** contains the names of persons acting in the text.  
Give this search order:

```
f person='queen' ↵  
S=2 <3> Find person='queen'
```

and now this one:

```
f person=queen ↵  
S=3 <115> Find person=queen
```

The first search order (three hits) finds only subfields of **person** which contain 'queen' alone. The second (115 hits) locates records where the subfields contain the term 'queen' alone or in combination with other terms ('Queen', 'Queen of Hearts', 'Red Queen', 'White Queen'). We can see this most easily by giving the **Display** order

```
d person=queen ↵
```

This list of four terms is shown:

```
(Display person=queen, 4 terms)  
T=1 <3> QUEEN  
T=2 <34>QUEEN OF HEARTS  
T=3 <50>RED QUEEN  
T=4 <53>WHITE QUEEN
```

Subfields of a **PHrase** field are separated by commas when they are output using a run-time format. Give the **Show Format** order:

```
s f=person ↵
```

This format shows only the record number and the contents of **person** for each hit of the last search performed (S=3). Each value for **person** is separated from the next with a comma:

```
Record 83 in Database ALICE  
PERSON : Fish Footman, Frog Footman, Duchess,  
Queen
```

*Note:*

*Any field name can be truncated (shortened) to a minimum number of characters which uniquely identifies it to TRIP.*

In fact, as there are no other field names beginning with 'p' the field name **person** could be shortened to its first letter only, making this the shortest form of the preceding order:

```
s f=p ↵
```



## Searching by Field Name

From the display list above, we can see that since the sum of the terms is greater than the number of records found (in this case, 115), some records must contain more than one of the terms shown. For example, to see how many records have both 'Red Queen' and 'White Queen' in their **person** fields, give the order:

```
f p=(white queen and red queen) ↵
```

```
S=4 <25> Find PERSON=(white queen AND red queen)
```

The parentheses indicate that both terms apply to the **person** field. Without parentheses, the search order,

```
f p=white queen and red queen ↵
```

```
S=5 <26> Find PERSON=white queen AND red queen
```

would read 'Find the records where the **person** field contains *White Queen*, and the term *Red Queen* appears anywhere in the record'.

## More About Truncation and Masking

In the first tutorial, we introduced the truncation symbol '#' to indicate an unknown number of characters at the beginning, the middle or the end of a word.

The colon truncation symbol [:] is a more precise way of omitting characters, and signifies 'one letter or none'. This is useful when looking for a word in either the singular or plural. For example,

```
f cat: ↵
```

```
S=6 <25> Find cat:
```

finds twenty-two occurrences of 'Cat' and six of 'Cats' in twenty-five records, whereas the order:

```
f cat# ↵
```

```
S=7 <54> Find cat#
```

finds more than twice as many records.

If you **Display** the vocabulary generated by the latest term by giving the order

```
d cat# ↵
```

you will see that in addition to 'Cat' and 'Cats', this truncation locates thirteen occurrences of 'Catch' and 'Catching', nineteen of 'Caterpillars' and one incidence of 'Cattle'.

Another useful symbol is the dollar sign [\$], which replaces whole words. Look for the expressions 'the little busy bee' and 'caterpillar' by giving the order:

```
f the $ $ bee and caterpillar ↵
```

```
S=8 <1> Find the $ $ bee AND caterpillar
```

where each '\$' replaces one word (note the single space between the \$\$'s).

For more details about truncating and masking, refer to the **Find** command sections in the *CCL Command Reference*.



## Part 2:

# Advanced Searching





## Chapter 4: Search Form Searching

A search form is a convenient means of giving search orders to TRIP. It is a single page form where the user types the search expressions into search fields, which the search form then uses to generate a search order for TRIP to perform. The hit record counts of all the fields combined are shown in a result box on the form, and there may be individual hit record counts shown for each field as well.

### Elements of a Search Form

A search form, which is designed by a File Manager, can assume nearly any configuration using these elements:

**Search Fields:** These are the fields in which the user types his or her search expressions. Generally, each field on the search form is linked to one or more fields in one or more databases, and each may be scrolled horizontally, so that combinations of expressions can be entered.

**Literals:** This is the fixed text written on the search form, such as the search form's title or field labels. It could, for example, indicate the type of search expression appropriate to each field, and it may also give help or hints as to the use of the search form as a whole.

**Result Boxes:** These display the results of the searches. There is always a result box for the entire search form, which gives the outcome of all the search expressions of all fields combined. There may also be a result box for each search field, which would give the findings of the search expression(s) for that particular field only.

**Command Boxes:** These present all of the courses of action available at any point in time during a search form session. The command boxes on the main command menu might include such options as New Search, Modify Search, Show Result or Leave TRIP, each of which may have sub-option boxes of their own. The menu boxes may change after choosing one or a succession of actions from the main menu.

Any number of the above elements can be combined to create search forms with any degree of complexity. As search forms are database subject, content and user dependent, they will vary widely between installations. We can at best familiarize you with their general use in preparation for individual instruction at your site.

The next section uses two simple search forms, **Alice\_Demo** and **Alice\_Demo2**, and the demonstration database **Alice** to illustrate the use of each of these elements. The search session follows the same structure as the CCL searches described in 'Searching for a Whole Phrase' in Chapter Three.

## Using a Search Form

## Access

There are several ways to gain access to search forms. If you are unsure of the name of the search form you need, use the **Show Search Form** (short form: **S SF**) command:

**s sf ↵**

on the CCL command line. This displays the search form name, creator, revision date and an optional brief description of each search form available to you.

Once you know the name of the search form you are interested in, you may open that form on the CCL command line using **Search Form** (short form: **SF**) and the search form name:

```
sf search_form_name ↵
```

You may also enter a search form directly from the system prompt, using these CLI switch commands:

```
trip -s forms -S search form name ↵
```

This statement calls TRIP, takes you directly into **Search** (option **s**) using ‘Forms’, and instructs TRIP to open the **Search Form** of your choice (option **S**), represented by *search\_form\_name*.

You will be prompted for the usual log on information, after which the search form will be opened.

Log on to TRIP if you have not already done so, and choose **Search** from the Primary Option Menu. Use the <↓ **Arrow**> key to highlight **Form Search**, which produces this screen:

Search	Administration	Data Entry	Other	Quit
CCL Search				
Form Search				
Leave				
Search using a screen form				11:01am

**Figure 4-1      The Form Search window**

Press <**Return**> or <**Enter**> (hereafter shortened to ↵). TRIP prompts you for the name of the search form you wish to use:

Search	Administration	Data Entry	Other	Quit
Search form: <input type="text"/>				
Search using a screen form 11:01am				

Figure 4–2 The Form Search prompt

Enter **Alice\_Demo** at the cursor position and press ↵ to confirm (remember that TRIP is case-insensitive, so names may be typed in lower case if you wish). The screen for search form **Alice\_Demo** is now displayed:

LEWIS CARROLL's		
*** Alice in Wonderland & Alice through the Looking Glass ***		
Chapter Heading: <input type="text"/>		
Any other term(s): <input type="text"/>		
PLEASE ENTER SEARCH TERM(S) THEN PRESS <ENTER>		
New Search	Show	Advanced Searching
Modify Search	Change Format	Leave TRIP
Enter Search Terms; Cursor Keys - Move; Enter - Search; PF2 - Help 11:35am		

Figure 4–3 The search form screen for Alice\_Demo

## Anatomy of a Search Form

There are several main parts or areas within a search form, each of which performs a separate function:

Search Entry Window		Search Report Window
Form Report Line		
<input type="text"/>	Command Menu Window	<input type="text"/>
Form Message Line		
TRIP Message Line		

Figure 4–4 The anatomy of a search form

The *Search Entry Window* occupies most of the screen you see before you, and holds both literals (title, field labels, instructions etc.) and individual search field boxes.

To the right or the left of that is often a *Search Report Window* (not found in the **Alice\_Demo** search form). This displays the number of hits for each search field in a corresponding report box, on the same line as the search box.

The *Form Report Line* holds the total number of hit records found by all the fields of the entire search form. Since no searches have yet been performed, it is currently empty.

Each screen can contain any number of boxes in its *Command Window* representing various courses of action, four to ten of which will be displayed at any one time.

The *Form Message Line* informs the user of changes in search form status (default formats, position in output etc.), and is also currently blank.

The *TRIP Message Line* provides information on key assignments, form movement instructions, **Help** and so on.

Because **Alice\_Demo** is a very simple search form, there are only two search fields available in the search entry window. These are 'Chapter Heading', which searches the field called **chapter**, and 'Any other term(s)', which can be used to search any field or combination of fields. There is no search report window.

## Cursor Movement Within Search Forms

Use <Tab> or the <↑ and ↓ Arrow> keys to toggle (move) back and forth between the search boxes.

If you wish to delete text from a search box, position the cursor in the box and press <Delete Line>. To clear the entire search form, use <Gold><Tab> to place the cursor in the command menu window and activate **New Search** with ↵.

To exit a search form, press <Leave>. To exit TRIP, press <Gold><Leave>.

## New Searches

With your cursor in the Chapter Heading box, search for all records containing text from the chapter entitled 'The Pool of Tears' by entering the term 'pool'. Press ↵ to build and execute the search command

**Find chapter=(pool)**

The following screen appears:

LEWIS CARROLL's		
*** Alice in Wonderland & Alice through the Looking Glass ***		
Chapter Heading:	<input type="text" value="pool"/>	
Any other term(s):	<input type="text"/>	
PLEASE ENTER SEARCH TERM(S) THEN PRESS <ENTER>		
<b>Total Number of Records Found By Complete Form:14</b>		
New Search	Show	Advanced Searching
Modify Search	Change Format	Leave TRIP
Enter Search Terms; Cursor Keys-Move; Enter-Search; PF2-Help		11:35am

Figure 4-5 An initial search using Alice\_Demo



The search term 'pool' is still displayed in the Chapter Heading box, and the number of hits for the whole form is shown in the form report line at the bottom of the screen labeled 'Total Number of Records Found by Complete Form: '.

Just below that you will notice that the cursor is positioned to the left of the **Show** option on the command menu window, and that **Show** is highlighted. After every action (**Search**, **Show** etc.) the cursor will reappear to the left of the option signalling the next most logical course of action to take.

Since we have just performed a search (and found fourteen records containing 'pool' in **chapter**), press **↵** to view the result.

Record 16		
Chapter: The Pool of Tears		
<p>"curiouser and curiouser!" cried Alice (she was so much surprised, that for the moment she quite forgot how to speak good English). "Now I'm opening out like the largest telescope there ever was! Good-bye, feet!" (for when she looked down at her feet, they seemed to be almost out of sight, they were getting so far off). "Oh, my poor little feet, I wonder who will put on your shoes and stockings for you now, dears? I'm sure I shan't be able! I shall be a great deal too far off to trouble myself about you: you must manage the best way you can - but I must be kind to them," thought Alice, "or perhaps they won't walk the way I want to go! Let me see. I'll give them a new pair of boots every Christmas."</p> <p>And she went on planning to herself how she would manage it. "They mu...&gt;&gt;</p>		
Total Number of Records Found By Complete Form:14		
Scroll Forwards	Next Record	Main Menu
Scroll Backwards	Previous Record	Show in Reverse Order
Cursor Keys - Move; Return - Execute Option; PF2 - Help		11:35am

**Figure 4-6**      **Displaying the result**

You can return to the search window at any time using **<Gold><Tab>**.

The currently active output format displays the record number, chapter and text of each hit, with hit terms highlighted as with CCL searching.

The message bar still holds the total number of records in the search result, however, the search screen has been replaced with a **Show** window containing the first record of the search result.

The choices on the option bar have also changed, with the cursor now appearing to the left of **Scroll Forwards**, the highlighted option.

If after examining the first screen of output you wish to continue reading, press **↵** to move forward one screen, or use the **<Next>** key.

To back up one screen, use the **<↓ Arrow>** key to highlight the **Scroll Backwards** option and press **↵**, or use **<Previous>**.

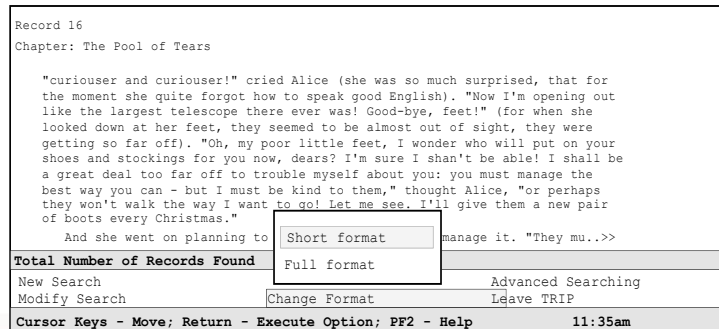
To move to the next record, use the **<Arrow>** keys to highlight **Next Record** and press **↵**. To move to the previous record, use **Previous Record** and **↵**.

If you are interested in viewing the output in reverse order (last record first), cursor over to **Show In Reverse Order** and use **↵**.

To return to the main option bar, choose **Main Menu** and press **↵**.

When you have finished viewing this search result, return to the main menu.

You will remember that the contents of only three fields for each record found were displayed just now. The output formats available for use with this search form are listed when you highlight the option **Change Format** and press ↵. This opens a sub-option box containing the output formats 'Short format' and 'Full format', with Short format highlighted (that is, the sub-option box default):



Record 16  
Chapter: The Pool of Tears

"curiouser and curiouser!" cried Alice (she was so much surprised, that for the moment she quite forgot how to speak good English). "Now I'm opening out like the largest telescope there ever was! Good-bye, feet!" (for when she looked down at her feet, they seemed to be almost out of sight, they were getting so far off). "Oh, my poor little feet, I wonder who will put on your shoes and stockings for you now, dears? I'm sure I shan't be able! I shall be a great deal too far off to trouble myself about you: you must manage the best way you can - but I must be kind to them," thought Alice, "or perhaps they won't walk the way I want to go! Let me see. I'll give them a new pair of boots every Christmas."

And she went on planning to manage it. "They mu...>>

Total Number of Records Found	Short format	Full format	Advanced Searching
New Search	Change Format	Leave TRIP	

Cursor Keys - Move; Return - Execute Option; PF2 - Help 11:35am

Figure 4-7 The Change Format sub-option box

To escape from a sub-option box without selecting an option, press <Leave>.

If you would like to see all of the information stored in each hit record, cursor down to 'Full Format' and press ↵. The message "Format FULL is now the default format." is exhibited on the form message line. Scroll forward to record number eighteen, where you will see examples of output for fields **person** ("Persons acting or referred to in the record:") and **speaker** ("Speakers in the record:") displayed.

When you are finished, return to the main menu and select **New Search** ↵, which clears the screen.

In addition to direct searches in **chapter**, we can use the Chapter Heading field box in combination with the search box labeled 'Any other term(s)', which has been predefined to search fields of type **Text** or **Phrase**. Enter 'humpty dumpty' in the **chapter** box and 'egg' in the Any Other Term(s) box and press ↵. TRIP compiles and carries out the search statement necessary to find the two records containing 'Humpty Dumpty' in the **chapter** field and 'egg' in any **Phrase** or **Text** field.

## Modifying Searches

This search form also provides a time- and labour-saving option called Modify Search, which allows editing of the previous search command. If your cursor is not already somewhere in the command menu window, use <Gold><Tab> and the <Arrow> keys to choose Modify Search, then press ↵. When your cursor is returned to the search window, edit the command so that the chapter box contains 'looking glass' and the Other Term(s) search area contains 'kitten' and press ↵. TRIP finds eight records for chapter headings 'Looking-Glass House' and 'Looking-Glass Insects' which also mention 'kitten' in a **Text** or **Phrase** field.

## Display in Search Forms

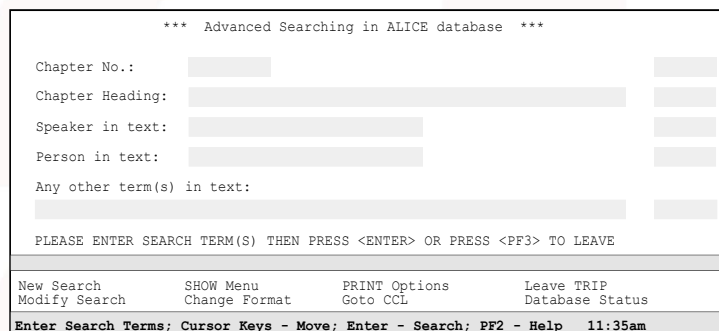
In many cases the *target field* (the field behind the box, which is being searched by a search form field) may be identified by making a **Display** of the database vocabulary for that field.

Return to the search window with <Gold><Tab> or **Modify Search**. With the cursor in the Chapter Heading box, press <Delete Line> to clear the field of text, then <Select>—a normal **Display** list appears with the terms in TRIP’s vocabulary for the target field. The name of the target field is given in the header ‘(Display *fieldname*=\$#, 24 terms)’, the *fieldname* in this case being **chapter**.

To escape from **Display**, press <Leave>.

You can also **Display** lists for selected terms in search form boxes, and incorporate those terms into searches. Type ‘queen’ in Chapter Header and press <Select>; two references (‘Queen Alice’ and ‘The Queen’s Croquet Ground’) are given. Choose ‘The Queen’s Croquet Ground’ with <↓ Arrow> and <Select>, and press ⌵ twice to bring it into the search form. TRIP translates your selection into a search order and executes the search, finding twenty-one records.

Move your cursor from the search entry window to the command menu window with <Gold><Tab> (you can toggle back to the search area in the same way if you wish). Highlight the option **Advanced Searching** and press ⌵. This opens a second search form intended for more advanced searching called **Alice\_Demo2**:



**Figure 4–8 The search form screen for Alice\_Demo2**

This search form is also accessible either directly from the system prompt or indirectly through **Form Search**, as previously described.

Here, individual search boxes have been provided in the search entry window for fields **chaptnr**, **person** and **speaker**, and are easily distinguishable by their search screen labels (‘Chapter No.’, ‘Person in text’ and ‘Speaker in text’). There is also a search report window on the right side of the screen containing one report box for each search box.

New command menu window options for this search form include **PRINT**, **Goto CCL**, **Status** and a **Show** menu.

With the cursor in 'Chapter No.', press <**Select**> to obtain a **Display** list. TRIP reminds you in the form message line that "Chaptnr is not a field of type TEXT or PHRASE." (it is of type **INteger**, and **Display** operates only on field types **Text** and **PHrase**).

You will also see that when you do a **Display** in screen boxes 'Chapter Heading', 'Person in text' and 'Speaker in text', the **chapter**, **person** and **speaker** fields are searched as expected, and TRIP displays the notice *Search* in each respective report box while it is searching for terms.

The 'Any other term(s) in text' box, however, appears to be searching a 'field' called **teph**. This is actually the name of a **Vlew** (a preselected group of fields for searching), which in this case has been defined to include any **Text** and **PHrase** fields. See the section in Chapter Five called 'Combinations of Fields' for more information on views.

Try this search. With the cursor in the 'Speaker in text' search box, enter

**queen of hearts**

and press <**Tab**> or the <↓ **Arrow**> key. TRIP displays *Search*, then the figure '19' in the search report box, indicating that nineteen records contain 'Queen of Hearts' in **speaker**.

The cursor should be in the 'Person in text' box. Enter

**gryphon**

and press <**Tab**> or <↓ **Arrow**> again. TRIP finds twenty-nine records.

To search for both terms together, like this:

**Find speaker=(queen of hearts) AND  
person=(gryphon)**

press ↵; just one record is found.

The cursor reappears beside **SHOW**—press ↵ to display the hit record. In the command menu window are the **SHOW Menu** options:

Search Form Option	Action Performed
<b>Show Results:</b>	return to top of output
<b>Select Record:</b>	choose one or more records for <b>Sort</b> or <b>Show</b>
<b>Scroll Forwards:</b>	move down one screen
<b>Scroll Backwards:</b>	move up one screen
<b>Next Record:</b>	move to next record
<b>Previous Record:</b>	move to preceding record
<b>MAIN Menu:</b>	return to main search menu
<b>Sort Output:</b>	choose to sort on <b>chapter</b> , <b>speaker</b> or <b>person</b> in ascending order

Figure 4–9 Show menu options for Alice\_Demo2

When you are ready, highlight and activate **MAIN Menu**, then **New Search** to return to searching.

Try searching for the terms 'dormouse' OR 'hare' in 'Speaker in text' by typing them connected with the **OR** operator. TRIP makes this search

**Find speaker=(dormouse OR hare) ↵**

and finds twenty-two records.

Any combination of searches can be made using standard CCL statements, as exemplified in this figure:

These Fields and Terms: Command:	Produce This Search
<b>Person:</b> person=(du#) AND	du# Find
<b>Other term(s):</b> rabbit	teph=(rabbit)
<b>Chapter:</b> turtle AND	Find chapter=(turtle)
<b>Speaker:</b> gryphon	speaker=(gryphon) AND
<b>Other term(s):</b> master and (turtle or tortoise)	teph=(master AND (turtle OR tortoise))
<b>Chaptnr:</b> 12	Find (Chaptnr=12) AND
<b>Person:</b> lizard	person=(lizard) AND
<b>Other Term(s):</b> jury#	teph=(jury#)

Figure 4–10 Possible CCL search combinations

Other options included in the main command menu window are the **Print** options, which offer three printing choices, **Database Status**, which displays the status screens for database **Alice**, and **Goto CCL**, which opens a standard CCL window for

searching. These and many other useful search features may be included in the search forms at your installation.



## Chapter 5: Advanced Features

This chapter contains advanced features of TRIP that are not covered by the tutorial sessions. Some sections include concepts which are introduced here for the first time, while others elaborate on features which have already been mentioned and are presented here in greater detail. Further references for each CCL statement are available in the *CCL Command Reference*.

Log on to TRIP now, open the CCL search window and demonstration database **Alice** to work the exercises in this section:

```
bas alice ↵  
S=1 <475> BASe alice
```

All examples which include History results in this chapter use the format displayed in the example above.

### Web Style Searching – Defining Find as FUZZ

In TRIP, the default search style for the **Find** command is Boolean search which, for most users, is more than sufficient to meet their needs; however, there are times when different types of non-Boolean searching may be necessary and, traditionally, TRIP has had the **FUZZ** command to provide such search capabilities.

Nonetheless, demand has risen for users to be able to use non-Boolean searching as standard and to this end, TRIP will permit the defining of the **Find** command so that it instead maps to the **FUZZ** command in order to give a 'Web style' search facility that may be more familiar to some users than Boolean search.

For more information on how to achieve this, consult the *CCL Command Reference*, **Define Find (FUZZ)** section.

### Best Match Searching – Find ABout()

*Note:*

*Best match searching is only available for fields of type TEXT or PHrase.*

### Overview

Whereas Boolean searching focuses on matching a request with a set of provably valid responses, best match searching focuses on matching a request to a set of responses that reflect the underlying intent of the request. From this set of possible matches, the search algorithm then provides a weighting (or judgment) as to how relevant each matched document is when compared to the information need expressed in the search query.

## Performing a best match search

As shown below, there are many different ways of exercising the best match search function. The simplest is to state an information need explicitly, i.e. to give the function the text of the query that you wish to match. This query text could be a simple phrase, a full sentence, an arbitrary fragment, or an entire page of text:

**Find ABOut(peanut butter)**

Likewise, one or more terms from a Display list may be submitted as an information need, using the “T=” syntax:

```
Find ABOut(T=n [TO m])
```

Someone wishing to “find more like this one” would make use of the “R=” syntax, whereby the content of the specified record is analyzed for information need:

```
Find ABOut(R=n [TO m])
```

Finally, in certain constrained circumstances it may be useful to find documents that match the information need expressed by all records in one or more search sets, using the normal “S=” syntax:

```
Find ABOut(S=n [TO m])
```

For those of you wishing to find out more about best match searching, please consult the ‘**Define About**’ and ‘**Find About**’ sections in the *CCL Reference Manual* and read the TRIP white paper entitled, “TRIP\_White\_Paper\_Non\_Boolean\_Search.pdf”, which can be found in the ‘doc’ directory of the TRIPsystem installation.

*Note:*

*Using best match searching on large search sets will result in extremely poor performance.*

## Setting up a database to support best match query

In either of the latter two cases in the previous section, the search algorithm will need to know what attributes of the records should be analyzed when attempting to construct the information need which is being expressed by those records. Equally, when indexing documents that will be tested for best match during queries of any of the forms shown above, the indexing engine needs to have this same information available.

The manager of such a database, therefore, must establish a new indexing flag on any field that is to be included in a non-Boolean calculation (either at indexing or query time). This can only be performed via TRIPmanager.

For more information on how to achieve non-Boolean inclusion for fields, please consult the ‘*Create word-based index*’ sub-section of ‘*The Modify Fields Collection Form*’, in Chapter 2 of the *TRIPmanager Administration Guide*.



## Searching using categories – Find Class()

*Note:*

*While it is possible to search using the **Class()** function in TRIPclassic, it is not possible to manage classes and class databases. For more information on that subject, consult the TRIPmanager Administration Guide.*

It is possible to implement classification searching in TRIP; i.e. The searching of documents based on classification tags, rather than on content.

To support category-based searching, CCL has been enhanced to include the search function: **Class()**. This function finds records that have been assigned category tags and can, of course, be combined within any Boolean expression as normal.

The **Class()** search function accepts a string as an argument and this string is interpreted as the name of one or more categories within the current scheme.

*Note:*

*Each open database may be assigned a different scheme and that this indirect mapping is performed separately for each open database.*

Once the names are matched, any category tags (record IDs) found are then located within the open database.

An example of the **Class()** function is shown below, being exercised on the imaginary classification database 'classtest':

Search	Records	Command
1	276	BASE classtest
2	10	Find CLASS(financial) AND australia
3	147	Find CLASS(economic)
4	181	Find CLASS(economic) OR CLASS(financial) AND USA

*Note:*

*The **CLASS()** function does not produce specific hit locations within documents, thus a simple search for a category on its own (e.g. S=3, above) will not result in highlight points being shown in any report.*

For more in depth information on classification in TRIP, consult the following documentation:

- The **Define Class()** and **Find Class()** sections of the *CCL Command Reference*
- The document entitled, '*TRIP\_White\_paper\_Classification.pdf*' which is located in the TRIPsystem installation 'doc' directory
- The TRIPmanager Administration Guide, located in the TRIPsystem installation 'doc' directory

- The TRIPmanager help file (*TRIPmmc.chm*) located in the TRIPmanager installation directory, or accessible via the Microsoft Management Console's Help menu.

## Fuzzy Searching – The FUZZ command

'Fuzzy' search implies searching for similarity, which can be very useful when searching for related terms, differently spelled or frequently misspelled words, or text which has many typographical errors. The command **FUZZ** (short form: **FUZ**) is generally used in combination with **Display** to generate a list of terms from which to choose. It uses this syntax:

```
d fuz (term) ↵
```

where *term* is the word of interest.

### Examples:

*Example 1:*

```
d fuz (not) ↵
```

finds 163 occurrences of 'not' in database 'Alice' and two occurrences each of 'note' and 'knot':

```
(Display FUZZ(not), 3 terms)
```

T=1	<163>	NOT
T=2	<2>	NOTE
T=3	<2>	KNOT

*Example 2:*

```
d fuz (alice) ↵
```

locates 426 occurrences of 'Alice', one of 'Alicee' and two each of 'Slice' and 'Slices':

```
(Display FUZZ(alice), 3 terms)
```

T=1	<426>	ALICE
T=2	<1>	ALICEE
T=3	<3>	SLICE

TRIP is attempting to locate terms which could be similar to the term given. This operation is by default based on an 'n-grams' algorithm. The term with the largest percentage similarity based on the 'edit difference' (in this case, 'Alice') receives the highest ranking and is placed at the top of the term list.

A search using **FUZZ** may be further tailored by using three out of four additional parameters, separated by commas:

1. The first parameter is an integer dictating the percentage similarity, defined using edit distance, that any search result has to the search term. The range of permissible values for this parameter is from 1 to 100.

Default Value: 75

2. The second parameter is depreciated and has no effect in normal fuzz searching; it can therefore be left out. However the leading comma must be used if any of the following parameters are entered, i.e. **Display/Find FUZZ(term,75,,2,1)**

3. The third parameter sets the number of top ranked search candidates to include and *only* show an effect in a FIND **Fuz()** command.

Default Value: 2

4. The fourth parameter defines which fuzzy algorithm is to be used and can have one of two integer values:

- 1 = n-grams
- 2 = Sliding mask

Default: 1

*Note:*

*The default is also the recommended search algorithm.*

If you wish, you can refer to the *CCL Command Reference* for more information on **FUZZ()** command modifiers.

Continue with database Alice to work the next six examples:

*Example 3:*

```
d fuz(late,80,,,1) ↵
```

```
(Display FUZZ(late, 80,,,1) 7 terms)
```

T=1	<10>	LATE
T=2	<2>	LATER
T=3	<15>	RATE
T=4	<4>	SLATE
T=5	<3>	GATE
T=6	<3>	HATE
T=7	<3>	PLATE

This order displays expressions for which eighty percent of the bigrams correspond to those of the term 'data'.

To illustrate how parameters affect fuzzy search performance, the terms and numbers of hits found for four sample parameter sets of the request **Display FUZZ (late...) ↵** from **Alice** are given below. As explained above, parameters that have no effect have been omitted:

*Examples 4 through 8:*

(...65,,,1)↵		(...75,,,1)↵ (...6,,,2)↵		(...100,,,1)↵	
10	LATE	10	LATE	10	LATE
	LATE				
2	LATER	2	LATER		153
	LIKE				
15	RATE	15	RATE		55
	LARGE				
4	SLATE	4	SLATE		43
	LIVE				
3	GATE	3	GATE		21
	LEAVE				
3	HATE	3	HATE		20
	LIFE				
3	PLATE	3	PLATE		5
	LOSE				
3	ATE	3	ATE		3
	LACIE				
2	LASTED				3
	LINE				
1	LATELY				3
	LOVE				
6	SLATES				1
	LADLE				
4	PLATES				1
	LITH				

*Note:*

*The third parameter, omitted above, sets the number of top results used in a Find command*

The **FUZZ** modifier and its parameters can also be combined with **Find** and **Define** statements. These and the examples in the next section on ‘Fuzzy Logic’ are taken from database **Alice**:

```
bas alice ↵
Search  Records  Command
...
```

```
3          475          BASE alice
```

*Example 9:*

```
f fuz(late,80,,3) ↵
```

```
Search  Records  Command
```

```
...
```

```
4          27          Find FUZZ(late,80,,3)
```

This order locates expressions which correspond to the top three results with an 80% similarity to the term 'late' (i.e. 'late', 'later' and 'rate'), located using the (default) 'n-grams' algorithm.

*Example 10:*

```
de fuz=80,1,7 ↵
```

```
'FUZZ parameters set to 80,1,7,1'
```

*Note:*

*For technical reasons, unlike in **Find FUZZ()** or **Display FUZZ()** commands, in a **Define FUZZ** command, it is not possible to omit parameter number two, which must instead always be set to a value of '1'.*

The **DEfined FUZZ** parameters above will apply to all subsequent searches until changed or this TRIP session ends. The **FUZZ** 'late' example above now finds five additional hits:

*Example 11:*

```
f fuz(late) ↵
```

```
Search  Records  Command
```

```
...
```

```
5          40          Find FUZZ(late)
```

It is not necessary to specify all three quantifiers in a **FUZZ** parameter string. In addition to the search term, you may specify only the first:

*Example 12:*

```
f fuz(goat,95) ↵
```

```
Search  Records  Command
```

```
...
```

```
6          5          Find FUZZ(goat, 95)
```

or the first and third:

Example 13:

```
f fuz (goat, 95, , 3) ↵
Search  Records  Command
...
7       14       Find FUZZ (goat, 95, 3)
```

When using **Find FUZZ()** or **Display FUZZ()** It is possible to skip one or two parameters (using commas as place holders) and make a statement such as the following one, which uses only parameter number three (the omitted parameters will remain a previously defined):

Example 14:

```
f fuz (goat, , 2) ↵
```

Truncation or masking characters *cannot* be used in the **FUZZ()** search term, nor are these necessary given the search capabilities of this feature.

## Fuzzy Logic and Relevance Ranking

Note:

*This section refers to the CCL **FUZZ** command which, despite it's rather confusing name, has no connection at all with the commands mentioned in the preceding section; i.e. **Define FUZZ()**, **Display FUZZ()** and **Find FUZZ()**.*

Using **FUZZ** as a **Find** command results in a search where the Boolean conditions are treated less rigidly than usual.

With **FUZZed** searches, the highest-ranking hit records are those which *best satisfy* the original search condition. Each record's ranking in the search result is determined both by the number of matching terms it possesses and by the distance between them—the shorter the distance, the higher the rank.

For example,

Example 15:

```
fuz mome raths jabberwock borogoves ↵
Search  Records  Command
...
8       2       FUZZ mome raths jabberwock
borogoves
```

finds one record (number 372) containing one occurrence each of 'jabberwock', 'borogoves', 'mome' and 'raths' and one record (number 248) with three occurrences of 'jabberwock' and two each of 'borogoves', 'mome' and 'raths'.

Field **WEights** (short form: **WEI**) may be assigned to certain fields to make hits in those fields more significant than others. Valid field weights range from one (the default value) up to an undefined positive integer.

Assuming a starting field **WEI**ght of one, this example assigns the **person** and **txt2** fields eight times the importance of other fields with a **DEfine** request:

*Example 16:*

```
de wei (person,txt2)=8 ↵
```

When **Showing** records from a **FUZZy** search, you should use the modifier **SORT=Frequency** to **SORT** them on the ranking. Using **SORT=Frequency** on a non-**FUZZed** search result causes the records to be sorted on the number of occurrences in each record.

Using the 'mome/rath/jabberwock/borogove' example above, type a **Show SORT=Frequency** order (short form: **S SOR=FR**):

*Example 17:*

```
s sor=fr ↵
```

Since **WEI**ght has been predefined as **(person,txt2)=8**, the records are displayed in reverse (numbers 248 and 372), as record 248 contains more hit terms than the other records.

## Searching More Than One Database

When a database is opened for the first time during a search session, some checking and reading is done that is not performed again if the database is reopened in a subsequent **BASE** order. Among other things, the system checks that the user has reading rights to the database and reads the information that forms the **STatus** list.

When a database is opened, an initial search is made which finds all the records in the database before it was last indexed (any records added since the last index will not be found). These are shown as the first search in the search history.

To begin, open databases **Alice** and **Corr** together using the **BASE** order:

```
bas two_databases=alice,corr ↵  
S=9 <574> BASE two_databases=alice, corr
```

**Two\_Databases** is a *multifile*, a temporary name (up to sixteen characters in length) that the user gives to a set of databases. A multifile can be considered a database in its own right, which has been created to hold all the records of the individual databases mentioned in the **BASE** order.

During the current search session, multifile names will appear in the Open Database window as if they were permanent databases. A maximum of thirty databases may be open at the same time during a search session.

*Note:*

*Do not confuse a multifile, which is temporary, with a cluster, a permanent collection of databases which are always opened together.*

If you open several databases and issue a **Show** or **Print** order, the records are shown in the same sequence as that in which the databases were initially opened. A **Show** order for a search that hits records of both databases outputs the records of **Alice** first.

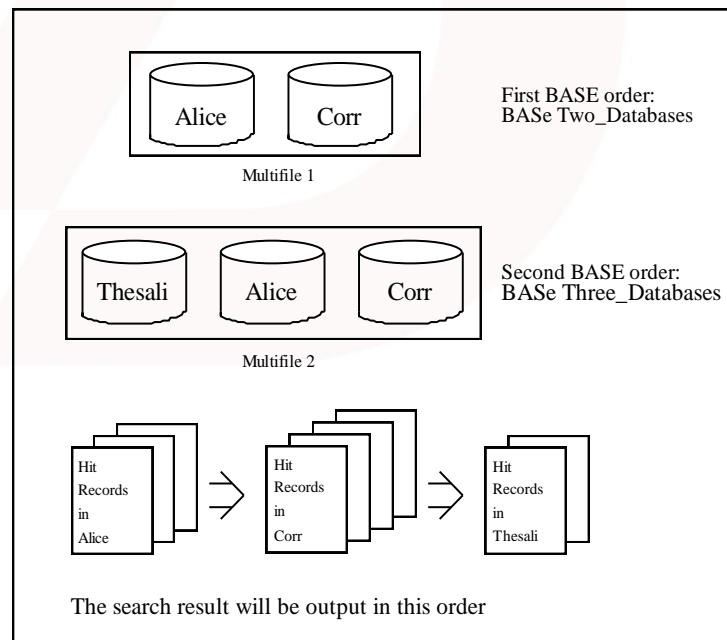
Suppose that later during the same session you wish to open the demonstration database **Thesali** at the same time as the other two. You can do this using one of these orders:

```
bas three_databases=thesali,two_databases □
S=10 <713> BAsE
three_databases=thesali,two_databases
```

or

```
bas three_databases=thesali,alice,corr ↵
S=11 <713> BAsE
three_databases=thesali,alice,corr
```

TRIP informs us that there are now 713 records in the multifile. This is diagrammed in the figure below, in which two multifiles with records in common are opened:



**Figure 5–1 The record sequence when opening two multifiles**

A **Show** order for a search that finds records in all the databases now outputs the records in the following order: **Alice**, **Corr**, and **Thesali**, as that is the order in which the databases were opened.

Try this search:



```
f send and all ↵
```

```
S=12 <7> Find send AND all
```

When you **Show** this result, you will see that TRIP found records containing both 'send' and 'all' in only two of the three databases open, with this output:

from Alice,

```
Record 135
Record 360
Record 386
```

and from **Corr**,

```
Record 52
Record 92 ...
Record 94
Record 97
```

As **Alice** was the first database opened, the records from **Alice** will be displayed first in standard (ascending) numerical order (record numbers 135, 360 and 386). These will be followed by the records found in **Corr** (numbers 52, 92, 94 and 97).

Using the **REverse** modifier in the **Show** order will reverse both the display sequence of the databases and the order of the records in each database.

Try this now:

```
s rev ↵
```

The database order is now **Corr-Alice**, and the hit records are now displayed in descending numerical order within each database:

from **Corr**,

```
Record 97
Record 94
Record 92
Record 52
```

and from **Alice**,

```
Record 386
Record 360
Record 135
```

If the **SORT** modifier is used in an output order with the intention of having the hit records of all databases sorted, the qualifier **MERGE** must be included. This ensures that the hit records from all of the databases are first 'merged' and *then* sorted. If **MERGE** is omitted, the records are sorted within each database, and then the sorted records for each database are output in the order in which the databases were opened:

```
s sor=rname,person merg ↵
```

*Note:*

*If merged sorted outputs are always required within a session, this can be made the default by using **DEfine MERGe**:*

```
de merg ↵
```

*TRIP confirms your request with the message “Sort merge of databases.”*

## Searching One of Several Open Databases

If you must search simultaneously in several open databases containing the same field names, you can restrict your searches to only one of the databases by appending the field name you wish to search to the corresponding database name as a suffix.

For example, to search the multifile sub-database **Corr** for all references to letters sent or received, you might search the body or text of each letter like this:

```
f corr.content=letter ↵
```

```
S=13 <27> Find corr.CONTENT=letter
```

History explains that twenty-seven records have been found that contain ‘letter’ in the **content** field of database **Corr**.

## DEfining A SCoPe Limit

TRIP allows you to define a given set of records within a database or cluster of databases, and limit all subsequent orders to only these records. This saves having to continually **AND** the search result with the one that defined the given set, and allows unrestrained text searching in a set of records that may have been defined by a non-textual search (for example, when using a record number range).

If you have executed all of the sample searches given so far, your History window will contain the following:

S=1	<475>	BASe alice
S=2	<99>	BASe corr
S=3	<475>	BASe alice
S=4	<85>	Find FUZZ(mouse, 80, 3)
S=5	<90>	Find FUZZ(mouse)
S=6	<14>	Find FUZZ(goat)
S=7	<14>	Find FUZZ(goat, 95, 3)
S=8	<3>	FUZZ mome AND rath AND jabberwock AND borogove
S=9	<574>	BASe two_databases=alice, corr
S=10	<713>	BASe three_databases=thesali, two_databases
S=11	<713>	BASe three_databases=thesali, alice, corr
S=12	<7>	Find send AND all
S=13	<27>	Find corr.CONTENT=letter

To limit the number of records available for later orders to the result set of a particular search, combine the **DEfine** and **SCoPe** (short form: **DE SC**) statements with the search order number:

```
de sc s=12 ↵
S=14 <7> DEfine SCoPe S=12
```

This example limits subsequent searches to the seven records (S=12) which contain the terms 'send' and 'all' in the databases **Thesali**, **Alice** and **Corr**.

If the search set you would like to use resulted from the last search made, the order to limit the scope of subsequent orders to that results is:

```
de sc s=0 ↵
S=15 <7> DEfine SCoPe S=14
```

In this example, S=15 duplicates the scoping of S=14. This order can be used repeatedly to limit the search result set after any successful search.

Remove the scope limit now so that we once again can search all 714 records of **Three\_Databases** by using **Define** and **Scope**:

```
de sc ↵
```

TRIP announces “Current scope deleted”.

When you need only one or two **Find** or **Display** orders to operate on a small set of records, rather than

- defining the scope,
- giving the order,
- and switching the scope off again,

it may be faster and easier simply to refer to the search that defined the limited result set. Whether the search set is the first successful search executed, the last or somewhere in between, simply add the search number to the command you wish to run.

The following **Find** order looks for the term ‘mail’ within a set of twenty-seven records containing the term ‘letter’ in field **content** of database **Corr** (S=13 in History):

```
f mail and s=13 ↵
```

```
S=16 <1> Find mail AND S=13
```

A request to **Display** the same information looks like this:

```
d s=13 content=mail ↵
```

or

```
d s=13 mail ↵
```

Another order which limits the scope of orders, **Define Scope SDI**, is covered later in this chapter.

## Other Forms of the AND Operator

On its own, the **AND** operator simply adds one search condition to another, to find all records which satisfy the conditions written before **AND** after. To be more precise and specify that the conditions are to be met within a certain region within a record, use these symbols:

Operator	Function
<b>AND.F</b>	hits must occur within the same field
<b>AND.P</b>	hits must occur within the same paragraph
<b>AND.S</b>	hits must occur within the same sentence
<b>AND.W</b>	hits must occur within the same word

**Table 5-1 AND Operator forms**

These operators may be used in combination, although parentheses are necessary wherever ambiguities might arise.

Try these **Find** examples from **Three\_Databases**:

*Example 1:*

```
f s=11 and crea# and.w #ti# ↵
```

```
S=17 <2> Find S=11 AND crea# AND.W #ti#
```

finds records containing the 'crea' and 'ti' truncations in the same word (that is, 'creation' and 'creating', not 'cream', 'create', 'created', 'creature' or 'creatures').

*Example 2:*

```
f creating and.f creation and s=11↵
```

```
S=18 <1> Find creating AND.F creation AND S=11
```

finds records containing 'creating' and 'creation' in the same field.

*Example 3:*

```
f s=11 and ancient and.s history ↵,
```

```
S=19 <2> Find S=11 AND ancient AND.S history
```

finds 'ancient' and 'history' in the same sentence.

*Example 4:*

```
f s=11 and ancient and.p mystery □
```

```
S=20 <1> Find S=11 AND ancient AND.P mystery
```

finds 'ancient' and 'mystery' in the same paragraph.

## Changing Format During a Show Order

It is possible to change output formats while browsing through the results of a search. This is useful where different formats are available for the database, and different types of formats are appropriate depending on the contents of the record.

For these examples, re-examine the results of search number twelve from the History window (**f send and all**) with the command:

```
s s=12 ↵
```

Record number 135 from **Alice** is the first to be displayed.

Move forward one screen. You should see the last eight lines of text from record 135 ('...when she had got...' to '...a very difficult game indeed.') and the first four lines of text from record 360 ('What tremendously easy riddles...' to '...that Alice could hardly...').

The current record is always the one displayed at the bottom of the screen, in this case number 360. To view only the current record (now number 360) during a **Show** order, use its modifier **Record** (short form: **R**):

```
s r ↵
```

To see the same record using a different format, you can request the new arrangement by adding a **Format** command. This illustration uses a fictional format called **New\_Format**:

```
s f=new_format r ↵
```

or

```
s r f=new_format ↵
```

To try this using the previous search **S=12**, escape from the current record using **Continue** ↵ (short form: **C**), and scroll down one screen further to record 52 of **Corr**. Try the above example using Format 2:

```
s f=2 r ↵
```

TRIP shows only the date and the senders' and receivers' names, addresses and countries, as defined in **Corr**'s Format 2.

*Note:*

*There are a number of ways to 'escape' from a **Show Record** command:*

- To make a new search, type a new **Find** order.
- To return to the top of your original search result, enter any new **Show** request.
- To escape and return to the original record, use **<Gold><S>** (for **<Gold><Show>**) or **Cont S** (for **Continue Show**).
- To return to the record following that original record, use **Continue**.

Try an example:

```
s s=12 ↵ (shows search result 12)
```

Scroll to record 360

```
s r ↵ (show that record)
```

```
c ↵ (continue viewing)
```

You are returned to record 386, which follows record 360

Field names can also be used in place of the format name in a **Show Record** request. Using the last search result obtained (S=20 Find ... ancient and.p mystery), ask to see only the contents of the **person** and **speaker** fields for that record:

```
s f=person,speaker r ↵
```

This does not affect an original **Show** order, which you can view at any time using **Continue**.

To change the format for the current record and all following records in the search result, use **FRom** in the search order. Using the hypothetical format **New\_Format**:

```
s f=new_format fr r ↵
```

This order is equivalent to a new **Show** order on the same search set, and shows only the records from the current record onwards. Using S=12 as an example once again, **Show** that search result:

```
s s=12 ↵
```

and scroll to record fifty-two, the first hit from **Corr**.

## Printing

### Print Commands

There are four **Print** (short form: **P**) commands in TRIP, which affect the immediacy with which the print job is started. They are:

```
p HOLD ↵
```

```
p NO HOLD ↵
```

```
p NOW ↵
```

```
p WAIT ↵
```

**Print HOLD** is the default, the command used by TRIP when a **Print** order is given without a modifier. It collects all of the print requests made during a session, and submits them as a batch job when the TRIP session is ended.

### Advantages

Having **Print HOLD** as the default **Print** command is useful, because all **Print** requests held can be listed using the command **Print?** (short form: **P?**), which shows both the print order number and the command used to generate each print job.

When necessary, you can **DElete** a print request that has been generated with **Print HOLD** using the command

```
del p=n ↵
```

where *n* is the print request number you wish to delete.

You can also delete all waiting **Print HOLD** jobs using

```
del p=all ↵
```

If you have no **Print HOLD** jobs in the queue and attempt to delete one or more, TRIP informs you that it has “No PRINT HOLD orders stored.”

### Disadvantages

The search which generated the result set to be printed must not be deleted. If you must delete a search after placing a **Print** order, one of the other **Print** commands should be used. If you attempt to delete a search after instructing TRIP to print it, you will receive the message “All requested sets not deleted due to pending PRINT order.”

**Print NO HOLD**, as the name suggests, does not hold print requests until the end of the session, but instead submits them to the batch queue as soon as the order is given.

**Print NOW** and **Print WAIT** are different, in that the print job is run as a sub-process rather than as a separate process in a batch queue. The advantage of this approach is that the print job cannot be held up by other jobs in the queue.

**Print NOW** runs a sub-process in parallel to the TRIP session, and so allows searching to continue. Note, however, that if the host session is terminated before the sub-process completes, the print job will fail. If the sub-process is still running when the TRIP session is terminated, TRIP issues a warning to this effect.

**Print WAIT** runs a sub-process, and blocks all further activity until the print job has completed. This is useful where all existing search sets are to be deleted, to allow searching from scratch.

### Other Print Commands

To **Print** the results of a search, add the search result number to the command:

```
p s=12 ↵
```

If you have more than one database open at a time (such as if you had used the order **bas two\_databases=alice, corr**), you can print information from only one of them with the **Print BASE** (short form: **P BAS**) order:

```
p bas r=corr ↵
```

and to print the contents of an entire (open) database, use

```
p bas ↵
```

### Printing Locally

If you have a locally-attached printer and would like to print a hard copy reference of something displayed on your screen (**Display**, **Status**, or **Help** screens, etc.), use the **Print Local** (short form: **P L**) command:

```
p l ↵
```



*Note:*

*This does not enable you to make a screen shot of the records contained in a search result if you have only the History window on screen! If you are not displaying the records in a Show window, you will get only a snapshot of the History screen.*

To **Print** the results of a search locally, add the search result number to the command:

```
p 1 s=12 ↵
```

If you have more than one database open at a time (such as if you had used the order **bas two\_databases=alice, corr**), you can print information from only one of them with the **Print BAsE** (short form: **P BAS**) order:

```
p 1 bas r=corr ↵
```

It is also possible to define the page size or override a page size limitation when printing on a local printer. Use **Define PAge** (short form: **DE PA**), which has two parameters, **rows** and **columns**, and an additional instruction, **Form Feed** (short form: **FF**) to direct the printer to make a form feed at the end of the output file. For example:

```
de pa=60,80 ↵
```

```
"Page settings for local printer redefined to 60,  
80"
```

defines a page size of sixty rows and eighty columns,

```
de pa=60,80,ff ↵
```

```
"Page settings for local printer redefined to 60,  
80, ff"
```

defines a page size of sixty rows by eighty columns and a form feed at the end of the print job, and

```
de pa ↵
```

```
"Paged output"
```

resets the printer settings to their defaults.

## Dates, Times, Numbers and Integers

Numeric range searching can be performed on all of the above-mentioned types of fields, and works in the same way for each. We will consider all of the searches that are possible with these data types, using the integer field in **Alice** called **chaptnr**.

Delete the contents of Search History with **DElete S=All**.

Open **Alice** (S=1) and try these **TO** and **FRom** examples (shown with TRIP's messages of acknowledgment) for:

...searching up to and including a value:

```
f chaptnr=to 2 ↵
```

```
S=2 <81> Find chaptnr=TO 2
```

...from a value inclusive onwards:

```
f chaptnr=fr 11 ↵
```

```
S=3 <46> Find chaptnr=FRom 11
```

...an exact value:

```
f chaptnr=1 ↵
```

```
S=4 <39> Find chaptnr=1
```

...a closed range of values:

```
f chaptnr=1 to 3 ↵
```

```
S=5 <124> Find chaptnr=1 TO 3
```

...and any combination of these coupled with any other kind of content search:

```
f chaptnr=to 1,fr 11 and rabbit ↵
```

```
S=6 <30> Find (chaptnr=TO 1, FRom 11) AND rabbit
```

The effect of **FRom**, **TO** and the closed range are illustrated below.

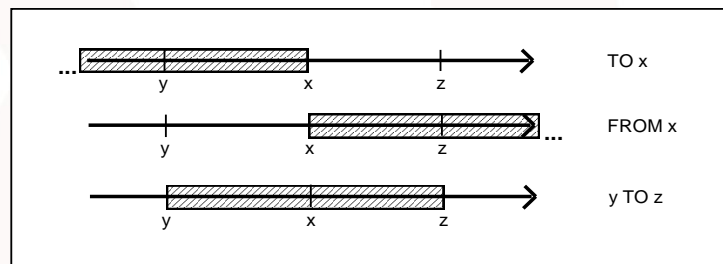


Figure 5-2 **FRom, TO and the Closed Range**

Searching of this kind can be performed on any field of type **DATE**, **Time**, **NUMBER** and **INteger**. Some of the search possibilities for a hypothetical field of type **NUMBER** called **Number\_Example** are shown below:

...up to and including a value:

```
f number_example=to -2.5 ↵
```

...from a value inclusive onwards:

```
f number_example=fr 6.5 ↵
```

...an exact value:

```
f number_example=5.5 ↵
```

...a closed range of values:

```
f number_example=-1.5 to 3.5 ↵
```

...and any combination:

```
f number_example=to -2.5,-1.5 to 3.5,fr 6.5 and  
entropy ↵
```

## Searching by Minutes and Seconds

The usual format of a field of type **Time** is **hh:mm:ss**, where **hh** represents the hours in twenty four hour clock, **mm** the minutes, and **ss**, seconds. This is referred to as **TIMEForm=1** (short form: **TIMEF**).

As long as colons are used as delimiters, leading zeros can be ignored, and if you keep in mind that *hours* are the most significant values, then trailing seconds (and, if desired, trailing minutes) can also be ignored.

These rules allow TRIP to interpret the following examples using the fictional **Time** fields **start\_time**, **leave\_time**, **lunch\_time**, **duration** and **lap\_time** without contention:

```
f start_time=8:5 ↵ (8:05:00am)  
f leave_time<18 ↵ (before 6:00:00pm)  
f lunch_time=12 to 13:50 ↵ (12:00am to 1:50pm inclusive)
```

This format (**hh:mm:ss**) works well if fields of type **Time** always contain full time values. If they happen to contain only minutes and seconds, however, all values are then of the form **00:mm:ss** and would require search orders like this one:

```
f duration=00:10:00 to 00:12:30 ↵
```

to locate values for **duration** between ten and twelve and one-half minutes.

As this is rather cumbersome, you may wish to make the minutes the most significant value using **TIMEForm=2**. In this way you can search for minute and second values without entering leading zeros and colons in your search orders:

```
f duration<25:59 ↵ (25 mins, 59 secs)  
f lap_time=3 to 4 ↵ (3 to 4 mins inclusive)
```

and instruct TRIP to interpret the first value as a minutes value. This will not prevent you from entering a full-format time value such as **1:59:59**, e.g.:

```
f lap_time=59 to 1:59:30 ↵ (59 mins to 1 hr 59 mins and 30  
secs  
inclusive)
```

To change the default **TIMEForm**, use the following **DEfine** order:

```
de TIMEForm=n ↵
```

*n* being a unit of time. Where *n=1*, the hours value is the most significant, where *n=2*, the minutes are the most significant, and where *n=3* the seconds are the most significant. TRIP recognizes a request such as this:

```
de TIMEF=3 ↵
```

with the message "TIMEFORM now set to 3".

## MEasure and FRequency

### MEasure

The command **MEasure** (short form: **ME**) is applicable to fields of type **NUmber** and **INteger** in a search result. It generates common statistical measures such as average and standard deviation, describing the data in a single **NUmber** or **INteger** field in the records of a search result and presenting them in a table. If a value contains too many digits, it is replaced by the overflow symbol **#####**. The order

```
me chaptnr ↵
```

or

```
me s=0 chaptnr ↵
```

(where **chaptnr** can be of type **NUmber** or **INteger**) displays the field name being analyzed (**chaptnr**), the database name to which the field belongs (**Alice**) and the search result number under consideration (Search: 6), in addition to statistical information for the latest search result. The order:

```
me s=5 chaptnr ↵
```

provides a statistical summary for the records in S=5.

### FRequency

The command **FRequency** (short form: **FR**) gives information on the distribution of values within a given field in the records of a search result, and works with fields of any type. This is done by orders such as:

```
fr field1 ↵
```

or

```
fr s=3 field2 ↵
```

where *field1* and *field2* are the target fieldnames.

For example

```
bas alice ↵  
S=7 <475> BAsE alice  
fr S=0 person ↵ (or just fr person)
```

shows the frequency of occurrence of the **persons** in the **Alice** database, and

```
fr txt2 ↵
```

shows the frequency of individual words in the **txt2** field.

Both a range and a step within the range may be specified for fields of type **NUmber** and **INteger**. For example, if the imaginary field **age** contains peoples' ages, and only people old enough to work but not yet of retirement age are being considered, a frequency analysis of the ages fifteen to sixty-five would be appropriate:

```
fr age 15 to 65 ↵
```

In order to have these summarized into five groups (intervals or bands) of ten years span, the *step modifier* ten is added:

```
fr age 15 to 65 10 ↵
```

Try this example from **Alice**, which examines the frequency of values between three and twelve found in the field **chaptnr**:

```
fr chaptnr 1 to 15 ↵
```

TRIP provides the field name being analyzed, the database to which it belongs, the search being examined and the number of entries found, in a similar fashion to **MEasure**.

Each figure for **chaptnr** appears in the Value column as '1-1', '2-2' and so on, where '1', '2' etc. represent both the lowest and the highest value within the interval specified. Since we have not requested that the output be divided into intervals or grouped in any way, each value for **chaptnr** appears on a separate line, making the *default interval* or *step* equal to one. If we are interested in looking at the frequency of chapter numbers six through twelve and would like them to be grouped into pairs or sets of two, we could combine **chaptnr** with *step modifier=2* in this way:

```
fr chaptnr 6 to 12 2 ↵
```

TRIP informs us that **chaptnrs** with values up to five represent 210 (44.2%) of the records found, while values six or seven are present in 95 (20.0%) of records, eight to nine, 106 records (22.3%), ten to eleven, 38 records (8.0%) and twelve, 26 records (5.5%).

## Timestamp

Each record in a TRIP database is timestamped with the date and time the record was first created, and thereafter when it was last modified. This information is

stored in field **TStamp** (short form: **TS**) and may be used in searches similar to these from **Corr**:

```
bas corr ↵
S=8 <99> BAsE corr
f ts=1992 ↵
S=9 <92> Find TStamp=1992
f ts=92 ↵
S=10 <92> Find TStamp=1992
f ts=1992-01-01 00:00:00 to 1992-12-31 23:59:59 ↵
S=11 <92> Find TStamp=1992-01-01 0:00:00 TO
1992-12-31 23:59:59
```

The three orders all produce the same search result, finding all the records in the open database that were created or modified in 1992.

Timestamp searching works in the same way as date and time searching, i.e. lists of values and/or intervals may be used:

```
f ts=to 1992-02-01 12:00,1992-06-01 13:30:30 to
1993 ↵
S=12 <99> Find TStamp=TO 1992-02-01 12:00:00,
1992-06-01 TO 1993
```

In a timestamp order, a time must not be entered on its own, i.e. without a date to its left, or TRIP will produce the message “*n o'clock* is no legal timestamp date” (*n o'clock* being the time value in question).

You can also combine **TStamp** searches with other search parameters using logical operators. To find all of the records in **Corr** which were entered or modified after February 1, 1992 and which contain the term ‘sven’ in field **sname**, type

```
f ts=fr 1992-02-01 and sname=sven# ↵
S=13 <4> Find (TStamp=FRom 1992-02-01) AND
sname=sven#
```

## Timestamp SDI

**SDI** stands for **Selective Dissemination of Information**. This TRIP feature uses Timestamp information in such a way that users can view only those records which have been modified or added to a database since their last TRIP session.

Some form of control is required, and this is implemented using **SDI** orders. At the start of a normal SDI search session, give the **DEfine SScope** order:

```
de sc sdi ↵
S=14 <99> DEfine SScope SDI
```

to confine your searching to only those records which have been added or modified since you last updated the **SDI** field.

If at the end of the viewing session you give the **UPDate** (short form: **UPD**) order:

```
upd sdi ↵
```

TRIP will acknowledge your request with “SDI values updated.”, and the current date and time will be written in the SDI Timestamp marker in your User Profile for that database. Any records which are modified or added to the database will have a Timestamp later than this SDI Timestamp value. However, the SDI Timestamp does not *have* to be updated at the end of a session. If it is not, you will be able to view all of the old records as well as recently modified or added records the next time you give the **DEfine SCoPe SDI** order.

Conversely, the SDI Timestamp can be explicitly updated to any value. If, for example, you wanted to see any records that have been modified or added since the beginning of the month, the order in this case would take the form:

```
upd sdi databasename ts=1992-07-01 ↵
```

TRIP holds separate SDI Timestamps for each database and user.

Using SDI has no effect on normal searching. If no **DEfine SCoPe SDI** order is given, searching takes place in the usual way. If you have used a **DE SC SDI** order, the **SCoPe** can be removed using **DEfine SCoPe** without modifiers or qualifiers, regardless of whether SDI is updated or not.

## Record Number SDI

TRIP stores the SDI Record Number in the same way as the SDI Timestamp marker, and can be used for SDI search sessions as well.

The essential difference is that whether a record is added or modified, its Timestamp value is updated, but a record is only allocated a new record number if it is added. Hence SDI searching on record numbers relates only to newly added records, whereas SDI searching on Timestamps relates both to newly added and newly modified records.

In all other respects, both SDI variants work in the same way. Both SDI values and the SDI Record Number can be updated using the **UPDate SDI** order:

```
upd sdi databasename r=n ↵
```

You will receive the message “SDI values updated.” once again. The only difference is that when defining the scope to include only newly added records rather than those that have been updated, the **DEfine SCoPe SDI** order is given the modifier **NO UPDate** (short form: **NO UPD**) as follows:

```
de sc sdi no upd ↵
```

```
S=n <n> DEfine SCoPe SDI NO UPdate
```

where *n* represents the search number and number of hits.

## Searching Tupled Fields

TRIP records may be used to hold tables of numbers or terms, similar to a spreadsheet. The columns are held in fields, and the rows in linked levels of subfields. The values in each row are then referred to as a *data tuple*.

The subfields of a database are not physically tupled in the database, but the link is maintained on data entry and in **Show** orders. In order to maintain the tuple when searching, the operators **AND.T** and **NOT.T** are necessary.

This concept is most easily demonstrated with an example:

In the hypothetical database **Holidays**, for each resort facility there is a record for each week of the season in the province. The Tourist Office records the hours of sunshine, the millimetres of rainfall and a forecast of 'sun', 'cloudy' or 'rain' for each day as tupled fields. In the first subfield of each of these three fields are the figures for Monday, the second subfields hold the figures for Tuesday, the third for Wednesday and so on.

Each record contains the resort name and week number, and seven subfields for each of the three fields.

A 'bad week' is one which contains one or more days where the sun shone for less than five hours, or where the rainfall was more than 2mm in any one day. Bad weeks can be found using the order:

```
f sun < 5 and.t rain > 2 ↵
```

A week which has an inaccurate rain forecast is one which has any one day for which the forecast was rain, but it does not. These are found using:

```
f forecast=rain and.t rain=0 ↵
```

A week which has an erroneous sun forecast is one for which sun or clouds were predicted, but which experienced rain. These are found using:

```
f rain>0 not.t forecast=rain ↵
```

All of these conditions find matches for any given day, and the orders find records which have any days that match. They indicate for which resorts in which weeks the statements are true.

Non-tupled searching is still available, as tupling occurs in data entry, searching and output, and is not inherent in the database structure.

For example, the order:

```
f rain > 0 not forecast=rain ↵
```

finds any week in which a daily rainfall was recorded, but there was no daily forecast for rain. However, without the qualification of being in the same tuple, it is not known whether or not this was the forecast for that day only.

As **Text** fields have no subfields, fields of any other type can be tupled. Field names must always be used when searching in tupled fields.



## Defining Maximums and Minimums

### Maximums

Upper limits or **MAXimums** (short form: **MAX**) may be set to the number of hits of a **Find** order, the number of terms of a **Display** order, or the number of records to be **SORTed** or **Printed**. To view the current values of some of the definable system parameters, use:

```
de? ↵
```

To raise or lower the **MAXimum** number allowed, use one or more of these **DEfine** orders:

DEfine Order	Default Max	TRIP's Confirming Message
<code>de f max=10000 ↵</code>	Unlimited	"New limit for FIND set to 10000."
<code>de d max=2000 ↵</code>	1,000	"New limit for DISPLAY set to 2000."
<code>de sor max=500 ↵</code>	1,000	Interactively: "New limit for SORT set to 500." (Unlimited during printing)
<code>de p max=100 ↵</code>	Unlimited	"New limit for PRINT set to 100."
<code>de map max=300 ↵</code>	1,000	"New limit for MAP set to 300."

Figure 5–3 Examples of DEfine MAXimum orders

These limitations save resources when a user gives an unusually long or complex order that might take a long time to process. If any of the limits are reached, TRIP provides a message like "More than *n* term hits, be more specific please." and stops processing the order, which can then be edited to produce a more modest result.

However, the limit for **Print** orders is ignored when a record list is specified, as follows:

```
p r=fr 1 ↵
```

or

```
p bas=alice r=fr 1 ↵
```

Also **Print** orders from the control database such as:

```
p bas ↵
```

```
p user ↵
```

are unaffected by the limit.

### Minimums

There may be an occasion where a search result of zero hits is useful, for example, when saving a search order for future use. The default for a **MINimum** (short form: **MIN**) search result is one, so that 'No hits' results only in a message, and the result is not added to the search history.

To set the minimum number of hits to zero, use the command:

```
de f min=0 ↵
```

The normal default (one) can be reset by giving the following:

```
de f min=1 ↵
```

*Note:*

*For more information on **Define MAXimum/MINimum**, see the CCL Command Reference section for the command.*

## Combinations of Fields: Views

A **View** (short form: **VI**) is a group of fields, and may be defined using either field names of type **PHrase** and/or **TExt** or the type names themselves (i.e. **PHrase** or **TExt**). A **View** may be given a name, in which case it can be used in place of a field name or a field type, or it can simply be made the default for **Find** orders.

For the **Corr** database, a **View** could be defined to include both sender and recipient names, and another view specified to include both the sender and recipient countries.

This is achieved with these orders:

```
de vi see_names=sname,rname ↵
S=15 <0> DEfine VView see_names=sname, rname
de vi see_countries=scountry,rcountry ↵
S=16 <0> DEfine VView see_countries=scountry,
rcountry
```

The following search orders are now valid:

```
f see_names=sven# and see_countries=sweden ↵
S=17 <1> Find see_names=sven# and
see_countries=sweden
d see_countries=# ↵
(Display see_countries=#, 24 terms)
d see_names=paul ↵
(Display see_names=paul, 3 terms)
```

The **View** name is used in the same manner as a field name, so it is possible to include it in the definition of another **View**, as seen below:

```
de vi see_all_names=scomp,rcomp,see_names ↵
```

```
S=18 <0> DEfine VView see_all_names=scomp, rcomp,  
see_names
```

Just as it is possible to use field names in a **Vview**, it is also possible to use field types. If no field is specified in a search order, TRIP searches by default in all fields that are of type **Text** or **Phrase**. This default can be changed using a **DEfine Vview** order such as:

```
de vi=see_all_names,te ↵  
"Default VIEW redefined."
```

Searching will occur only in the four fields defined by the **Vview** See\_All\_Names, as well as in all **Text** fields. No **Vview** name is used in this kind of command.

Field names and types and **Vview** names can be used in combination in both types of **DEfine Vview** order.

To restore the normal default, use this order:

```
de vi=te,ph ↵  
"Default VIEW redefined."
```

Use the **DEfine?** order to look at any **Views** which may currently be defined and their related fields.

## Display Features

### Display of the Contents of a Field

The orders:

```
d sname=# ↵  
(Display sname=#, 38 terms)  
d see_all_names=# ↵  
(Display see_all_names=#, 103 terms)
```

where **sname** is the name of a **Text** or **Phrase** field and See\_All\_Names is the name of a **Vview**, displays a list of all the terms in that field or view provided that their number does not exceed the current limit set by **Display MAXimum**.

*Note:*

*This syntax corresponds to **Find** orders looking for non-empty fields.*

### Display of the Terms of a Search Result

The orders:

```
de vi see_all_names=rname,sname,rcomp,scomp ↵  
"VIEW SEE_ALL_NAMES redefined."  
f #son ↵  
S=19 <21> Find #son
```

```
d s=0 #son ↵
```

```
(Display S=0 #son, 12 terms)
```

displays a list of all the terms ending with 'son' in the records of the nineteenth search result.

If the terms 'Larsson' and 'Johansson' were selected from the list, the new search result would correspond to the order:

```
S=20 <6> Find S=19 AND.R ("JOHANSSON" OR  
"LARSSON")
```

TRIP automatically alphabetizes your selections in the CCL statement.

## Display Sorted by Frequency

To see the list of terms sorted in descending order of frequency instead of alphabetically, the modifier **Sort=Frequency** is used in the **Display** order, as follows:

```
d sor=fr see_all_names=#son ↵
```

```
(Display Sort=Frequency name=#son, 7 terms)
```

The term occurring most frequently is 'Rolf Larsson', which heads the list. Terms with the same frequency appear alphabetically by frequency, hence the three terms with two occurrences each are ordered by first name (*Helen* Hasselberg Nilsson, *Orvar* Svensson and *Rolf* Larsson), as are the three terms with one occurrence each (*Erik* Andersson, *Ferdinand* Peterson and *Steve* Jackson).

As many terms as may be displayed may be sorted on frequency (see the section on 'Fuzzy Searching' at the beginning of this chapter for more information on **FUZZY Display**).

## Defining the ',' and ' ' to Represent Other Operators

### The Logical OR Operator

As has been shown, the logical **OR operator** allows alternative search conditions to be specified. In the following order:

```
f london or boston or new york ↵
```

```
S=21 <13> Find london OR boston OR new york
```

if a record satisfies any of the conditions, it is considered a hit.

The comma character may be used to represent the **OR operator** using the **DEFINE** order:

```
de ,=or ↵
```

```
"Comma delimiter is now treated as OR"
```

This allows an order of the form:

```
f london,boston, new york,berlin,stockholm,  
san francisco ↵  
S=22 <98> Find (london, boston, new york,  
berlin,  
stockholm, san francisco
```

## The Logical AND Operators

The comma character could be defined to represent the logical operators **OR** or **AND.x** with these orders:

```
de ,=or ↵  
"Comma delimiter is now treated as OR"  
  
de ,=and.s ↵  
"Comma delimiter is now treated as AND.S"  
  
de ,=and.f ↵  
"Comma delimiter is now treated as AND.F"
```

The latter order would make the following two requests equivalent:

```
f jan, sven# ↵  
S=23 <3> Find jan, sven#  
  
f jan and.f sven# ↵  
S=24 <3> Find jan AND.F sven#
```

The **SPace** character (short form: **SP**) can also be used to represent the **AND.x** operator (where x represents the operator suffix), and it goes one step further than the comma character in that it allows the definition to apply to specific fields and/or **Views**. A **SPace** cannot, however, be used with the **OR** or **XOR** operators.

## Field-Specific Definitions For Space

The **SPace** character can be defined within a specific field, field type or view. Whenever the same field name, type or view name is used within a **Find** order, the definition is active for that name.

Starting from the normal **SPace** default, suppose the following orders are given:

```
de vi receiver_name=rname ↵  
S=25 <0> DEfine View receiver_name=rname  
"VIEW RECEIVER_NAME redefined"  
  
de sp(receiver_name)=and.s ↵  
"Space within specified fields is now treated as  
AND.S"
```

Followed by the search orders:

```
f receiver_name=mats lindquist ↵
```

```
S=26 <15> Find receiver_name=mats lindquist  
f receiver_name=mats and.s lindquist ↵  
S=27 <15> Find receiver_name=mats AND.S  
lindquist  
f rname=mats lindquist ↵  
S=28 <1> Find rname=mats lindquist  
f mats lindquist ↵  
S=29 <1> Find mats lindquist)  
f mats and Lindquist ↵  
S=30 <50> Find mats AND lindquist
```

The first two orders are equivalent, and find all occurrences of the word 'Lindquist' in subfields of the field **rname** that also contain the first name 'Mats'.

The third order looks only for 'Lindquist' in subfields of the field **rname** where it is immediately preceded by 'Mats'.

The fourth order searches all fields for occurrences of 'Lindquist' where it is immediately preceded by 'Mats'. There is one occurrence in a **TExt** field.

The fifth order finds every occurrence of 'Mats' wherever it appears with 'Lindquist'.

Only those fields named in the definition of the **SPace** character will be affected.

Field names, types and views can be mixed in **DEfine SPace** orders as follows:

```
de sp(te,receiver_name)=and.f ↵  
"Space within specified fields is now treated as  
AND.F"
```

Following this order, these two **Find** requests would be equivalent:

```
f te=$rip system or receiver_name=mats lindquist ↵  
S=31 <65> Find TExt=$rip system OR  
receiver_name=mats  
lindquist  
f te=$rip and.f system or receiver_name=mats  
and.f  
lindquist ↵  
S=32 <65> Find TExt=$rip AND.F system OR  
receiver_name=mats AND.F lindquist
```

Comma and **SPace** may thus be given similar functions in **Find** orders; however, the comma cannot be restricted to selected fields, field types or views, and **SPace** cannot represent the **OR** operator.

## Chapter 6: Thesaurus Searching

In TRIP, a thesaurus is a database with a special structure, which permits it to be opened and used in conjunction with other databases in order to perform standard thesaurus operations. It contains words and phrases ordered according to their meanings, each of which is related to other terms in a treelike arrangement.

A thesaurus is a powerful tool which can enhance the quality of free text searching. It permits a user to extend TRIP's search functionality to include additional or alternative search terms, together with the terms used in a normal search strategy. These additional terms may be synonyms to a given term provided, or they may be terms which fall in a hierarchical tree structure that has been designed for a given application. TRIP permits the use of broader and narrower term relationships, as well as terms which are on the same level (called *related terms*).

In general, a thesaurus will have been developed by your system manager as part of an application. This chapter therefore only reviews the use of thesaurus commands and operators.

In order to effectively use the TRIP Thesaurus facility, it is important to understand the structure used by TRIP and how CCL search routines apply thesauri to a database.

### Thesaurus Structure

Each thesaurus record contains the following elements and descriptions:

<b>CT</b>	(Controlled Term)	the main term of the record
<b>BT</b>	(Broader Term)	this term's nearest more general term(s)
<b>NT</b>	(Narrower Terms)	its nearest more specific term(s)
<b>RT</b>	(Related Terms)	relations other than the <b>NT</b> or <b>BT</b>
<b>UF</b>	(Used For)	synonyms and near-synonyms of the main term ( <b>CT</b> )
<b>SN</b>	(Scope Note)	a description of the main term
<b>NR</b>	(Term Number)	a hierarchical term number (optional)

Figure 6–4 Thesaurus elements

### Elements and Their Use

#### The Controlled Term

There is one main field in each record, the **CT** term (Controlled Term), which TRIP assumes is to be used when performing a thesaurus search. The Controlled Term is

mandatory, and there can be only one per record. Its closest relations, the terms that occur in the **BT**, **NT**, and **RT** fields, will be the controlled terms of their own records in the thesaurus. The only indexed terms in a thesaurus are **CTs** and Synonyms. **BTs**, **NTs** and **RTs** are not indexed, since by definition they are references to other Controlled Terms. Any additional fields which may have been defined may or may not be indexed, just as in a standard database.

## The Broader Term

Broader Terms are those which are one level up ('parent' terms) in the thesaurus tree. Multiple **BTs** are allowed for any **CT**, thereby permitting the thesaurus to branch out upward as well as downward. If a **CT** is actually the 'top term' or uppermost level in the tree, its **BT** will be left empty, and wherever a **BT** is used, it must also be the **CT** in another record. This is what forms the pathway up through the tree when searching.

For example, in the 'Animal' ladder below,



the Controlled Term 'Pig' belongs to a larger group (its Broader Term) called 'Barnyard Animals'. It, in turn, is the Controlled Term of another record, and has 'Animals' as *its* Broader Term. 'Animals' itself forms the Controlled Term of yet another record, but because the Broader Term field of this record is empty, we know that 'Animals' is the top term of this tree.

Seen another way,



'Pig' is a subset of 'Barnyard Animals', which is a subset of 'Animals', which is the top of the tree.

## The Narrower Term

These are the terms one level below each Controlled Term, the 'child' terms. There can be many of these for every **CT**, and if the **CT** is at the bottom of the tree (the last term in its pathway), the Narrower Term will be empty. As with Broader Terms, for every Narrower Term used there must be a corresponding Controlled Term.

Using the previous example, 'Barnyard Animals' is a Narrower (lower) Term for 'Animals', and 'Pig' is a Narrower Term for 'Barnyard Animals'. 'Pig', however, having no **NTs** beneath it, is the lowest or most finely-divided term in the tree.



## The Related Term

These are used to link Controlled Terms that are normally at the same level in the hierarchy ('sibling' terms), although it is possible to use related term links which have no clear hierarchical relationship to one another. There can be many Related Terms for each Controlled Term, but they are not required.

Adapting the 'Animal' example,



'Cow', 'Horse', 'Goat' and 'Sheep' may all be defined as Related Terms of 'Pig'. 'Barnyard Animals', 'Domestic Animals' and 'Wild Animals' may also be related terms of one another.

## Defining and Using the Thesaurus

Since thesauri are standard TRIP databases, they can use all of the standard database functions discussed up to this point—they can be opened, searched, combined or joined with other databases, or used as controlled term lists for data entry in other databases.

A thesaurus only takes on a special character when the **DEfine THESaurus** command is applied to it. The **DE THES** command is a special case of the **DE MAP (DEfine MAP)** command; that is, thesaurus functions are basically a specialized set of indirect search commands (see Chapter Seven, 'Indirect Searching' for more information).

It is important to understand **DEfine THESaurus**, as it has a direct impact on search results.

When you **DEfine** a thesaurus in TRIP, you determine five things:

the thesaurus that will be used (defined as active)

the thesaurus element(s) to be searched (defaults: **CT** and **UF**)

the thesaurus source element(s) from which to extract search terms (default: **CT**)

the database destination field(s) to be searched for the extracted terms (default: all **PHrase** fields)

whether or not exact matching of the entire phrase is required, i.e. if the subfields in the database(s) must contain nothing more than the phrase sought for (default: no).

Enter CCL Search mode and open database **Alice** to work the examples in this chapter:

```
bas alice ↵
```

TRIP gives the usual message:

```
S=1 <475> BAsE alice
```

Hereafter, all examples showing a result in Search History will have that message printed immediately after the command which generated it.

You may recall having seen a number of databases with unfamiliar names while using the **BAsE** command, one of which may have been **Thesali** (**THESaurus** for database **ALice**). If you give the **DEfine THESaurus** (short form: **DE THES**) order:

```
de thes=thesali ↵
```

```
S=2 <0> DEfine THES=PHrase:thesali.CT:PHrase
```

TRIP notifies you that “THESALI is now the default thesaurus.”, and that the three search defaults of the **DEfine** order are in effect. This TRIP shorthand can be interpreted as follows:

```
DEfine THES=PHrase:thesali.CT:PHrase
```

This portion of the **DEfine** statement indicates that only the indexed **PHrase** elements in the thesaurus will be searched (the default: **CT** and **UF**).

Additional possibilities include **DEfine THES=CT...**, where only the **CT** field is searched (no synonyms are used), and **DEfine THES=PHrase+Text...**, in which all indexed **PHrase** and **Text** fields are searched (**CT**, **UF**, **SN** and any other indexed fields present).

```
DEfine THES=PHrase:thesali.CT:PHrase
```

This portion of the order dictates which thesaurus is to be used.

```
DEfine THES=PHrase:thesali.CT:PHrase
```

This option determines which elements will be used as search terms, either against the target database (CT, BT, NT and RT commands) or in additional paths in the thesaurus (UP, DOWN and Display).

The default (shown above) is to extract terms from the CT element only. Another option is **DEfine...PHrase**, which allows direct term extraction from both Controlled Terms (CT), Synonyms (UF) and any other indexed PHrase fields.

**DEfine THES=PHrase:thesali.CT:PHrase**

This parameter controls which fields will be searched in the database which has been opened for searching by the terms found in the thesaurus, the default (shown above) being PHrase.

Other alternatives are **DEfine...PHrase + TExt** (or **TExt + PHrase**) which allows searching in both PHrase and TExt fields, **DEfine...TExt**, which limits searching to fields of type TExt, and **DEfine...field**, where *field* can be any single field or view name.

With the above **DEfine** defaults in place, if you were to give the order:

```
f ct(haigha) ↵  
S=3 <15> Find CT(haigha)
```

TRIP will locate all the thesaurus records in **Thesali** that contain 'Haigha' in the **PHrase (CT or UF)** elements, pick the Controlled Terms (**CTs**) of these records, and look for them in all the **PHrase** fields of **Alice**.

You may wish to change these defaults.

For example, you might like to:

1. Direct the searches in the thesaurus to the **CT** element only.
2. Pick terms from the **CT** and the **UF** elements (**PHrase** elements).
3. Search for the terms in the **PHrase** and **TExt** fields of **Alice**.

To do this, give this **DEfine** order (using the short forms of the modifiers):

```
de thes=ct:thesali.ph:te+ph ↵  
S=4 <0> DEfine  
THESaurus=CT:thesali.PHrase:TExt+PHrase
```

After which the search request:

```
f ct(haigha) ↵  
S=5 <16> Find CT(haigha)
```

will locate thesaurus records that contain 'Haigha' in their **CT** elements, pick the **CT** and the **UF** terms of those records ('Haigha' and 'King's Messenger'), and look for those terms in the **PHrase** and the **TExt** fields of **Alice**.

If you want exact matching of your search term (see item number five in the previous section, 'Defining and Using the Thesaurus'), enclose the field name or type(s) following the second colon in single quotation marks, as in:

```
de thes=ct:thesali.ph:'speaker' ↵  
S=6 <0> DEfine  
THESaurus=CT:thesali.PHrase:'speaker'
```

To view the thesaurus definitions, use the **DEfine** command

```
de? ↵
```

and scroll through the display to find the statement beginning with 'THES = '.

To restore the default settings, use

```
de thes=thesaurus_name ↵
```

Do this now with:

```
de thes=thesali ↵  
S=7 <0> DEfine  
THESaurus=PHrase:thesali.CT:PHrase
```

## CCL Orders and the Thesaurus

**CT** and the other thesaurus operators are used in **Find** and **Display** orders to indicate that the current thesaurus is to be used when the order is carried out. The **Display** order will then show records from the thesaurus, and the **Find** order will look up the term in the thesaurus and search for the specified thesaurus terms in the open database(s).

**Display** searches the thesaurus and provides lists of terms based on the format used and the options included in the **DEfine THESaurus** command. **Find**, while it operates on the same principles as **Display**, also uses the list of terms collected as the search terms in the target (opened) database. We will make use of both throughout the remainder of this chapter.

For example, if the default **DEfine THESaurus** command is still in effect from the previous example (both **CT** and **UF** elements are searched, but only **CT** is extracted), the following six **Display** statements are true:

DISPLAY CT(*term*)(where *term* can be any standard TRIP search value, including truncation) will find the *term* in all **CT** and **UF** elements and list it with some or all of this information (depending on how the thesaurus was built):

- the Controlled Term
- Synonyms (labeled 'Syn:')
- Related Terms (labeled 'RT:')
- a definition (labeled 'Com:', for 'Comment')

Try this Display CT request:

```
d ct(dinah) ↵
```

(Display CT(dinah), 1 main term)	
T=1	Dinah RT: Cheshire cat Com: Alice's pet cat, mother of the kittens Kitty and Snowdrop.
(History)	
S=3	<1> Find CT(haigha)
S=4	<0> Define THESaurus=CT:thesali.Phrase:Text+PHrase
S=5	<1> Find CT(haigha)
S=6	<0> Define THESaurus=CT:thesali.Phrase:'speaker'
S=7	<0> Define THESaurus=PHrase:thesali.CT:PHrase
(Enter your command, please.)	(Database) Alice
Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit 11:39am	

Figure 6–1 Display CT

TRIP informs you that it has found one main term (the Controlled Term), that there is a Related Term ('Cheshire Cat') and that 'Dinah' is Alice's pet cat, the mother of the kittens 'Kitty' and 'Snowdrop' (the Definition or Comment).

DISPLAY BT(term) will find the term in all CT and UF elements, extract all BT terms in those records, find CT terms which match them and display some or all of this information:

- the Controlled Term
- Synonyms
- the Broader Term (as a Controlled Term)
- Related Terms
- a definition

Levels within the tree are indicated by indentation of the Controlled Terms as they are displayed.

An example of a **Display BT** example might be:

```
d bt(haigha) ↵
```

(Display BT(haigha), 1 main term)	
T=1	Servants of Royalty
T=2	Haigha
	Syn: King's Messenger
	RT: Hatta
	Com: Haigha is the March Hare in another incarnation.
(History)	
S=3	<1> Find CT(haigha)
S=4	<0> Define THESaurus=CT:thesali.Phrase:TEExt+PHrase
S=5	<1> Find CT(haigha)
S=6	<0> Define THESaurus=CT:thesali.Phrase:'speaker'
S=7	<0> Define THESaurus=PHrase:thesali.CT:PHrase
(Enter your command, please.)	(Database)
	alice
Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit	
11:39am	

Figure 6–2 Display BT

There is one Controlled Term with a Broader Term of ‘Servants of Royalty’, while ‘Haigha’ is analogous to ‘King’s Messenger’ (Synonym), ‘Hatta’ is the Related Term and the Definition or Comment states that ‘Haigha’ is actually the March Hare in another incarnation.

DISPLAY RT(term) will find the term in all CT and UF elements, extract the RT terms, search for them in CT fields which match them and display any or all of the following:

- the Controlled Term
- Synonyms
- Related Terms
- a definition

Try this exercise:

d rt(dodo) ↵

(Display RT(dodo), 1 main term)	
T=1	Dodo
	RT: Pigeon
	Com: The Dodo, being a fat and slow-moving bird, is extinct since the seventeenth century. Before that it lived on Mauritius.
T=2	Pigeon
	RT: Dodo
(History)	
S=3	<1> Find CT(haigha)
S=4	<0> Define THESaurus=CT:thesali.Phrase:TEExt+PHrase
S=5	<1> Find CT(haigha)
S=6	<0> Define THESaurus=CT:thesali.Phrase:'speaker'
S=7	<0> Define THESaurus=PHrase:thesali.CT:PHrase
(Enter your command, please.)	(Database)
	alice
Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit	
11:39am	

Figure 6–3 Display RT

There is, again, one main term (‘Dodo’) with ‘Pigeon’ as the Related Term, and a definition. There is also a cross-reference to the main term ‘Pigeon’, as it mentions ‘Dodo’ as a Related Term.

DISPLAY UP(term)        will find the term in the same manner as Display BT, except that all levels above the term specified are displayed, whereas Display BT only searches up one level. This means that the term is searched, its BT element is extracted and searched, then that term’s BT element is extracted and searched and so on, until the top of the tree is reached. The display format is the same as for BT.

For example,

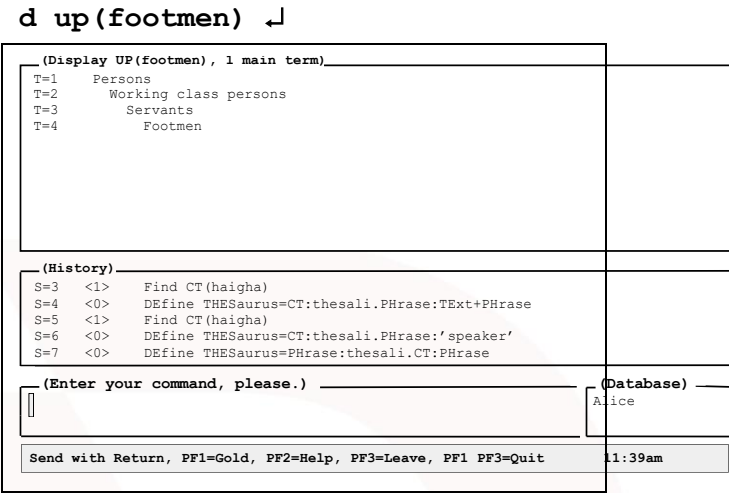


Figure 6–4        Display UP

informs us that ‘Footmen’ is a member of a larger group of terms called ‘Servants’, which is in turn part of a set known as ‘Working class persons’, which is an element of a main collection named ‘Persons’.

DISPLAY NT(term)

DISPLAY DOWN(term)    these work the same way as Display BT and Display UP, except that they apply the NT (Narrower Term) elements, thereby working downward from the term rather than upward. The display is also essentially the same.

Try this:

d down (footmen) ↵

(Display DOWN(footmen), 1 main term)	
T=1	Footmen
T=2	Frog Footman
	RT: Fish Footman
T=3	Fish Footman
	RT: Frog Footman
(History)	
S=3	<1> Find CT(haigha)
S=4	<0> Define THESaurus=CT:thesali.Phrase:TEExt+PHrase
S=5	<1> Find CT(haigha)
S=6	<0> Define THESaurus=CT:thesali.Phrase:'speaker'
S=7	<0> Define THESaurus=PHrase:thesali.CT:PHrase
(Enter your command, please.)	(Database)
	Alice
Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit	
11:39am	

Figure 6–5 Display DOWN

We discover that the term 'Footmen' is in itself a larger grouping and that it contains two narrower terms, 'Frog Footman' and 'Fish Footman', each of which has the other defined as a Related Term.

Judicious use of these **Display** commands will help you to uncover and map the framework of, and relationships between, terms for any thesaurus.

With **Find**, TRIP searches for the *term* supplied using the same rules as discussed above. The default for the list of terms collected is Controlled Terms only, although other combinations of terms may be specified using other parameters in the **Define THESaurus** command. The search default is **PHrase** fields only in the target database. The result of each **Find** reflects the number of records which contain any of the Controlled Terms, and all **CTs** found are highlighted.

The thesaurus operators **CT**, **BT**, **UP**, **NT**, **DOWN** and **RT** may be used in **Find** commands as well as with **Display**, as these examples show. See the upcoming section on 'Searching Exercises' for further illustrations of their use.

```
f ct(fawn) ↵
S=8 <4> Find CT(fawn)

f bt(parrot) ↵
S=9 <5> Find BT(parrot)

f down(alice's servants) ↵
S=10 <4> Find DOWN(alices servants)

f rt(stigand, archbishop of canterbury) ↵
S=11 <2> Find RT(stigand, archbishop of
canterbury)
```

## Structure of Thesaurus Thesali

A thesaurus may be defined as having one or more main *trees* or pathways, each of which is actually a separate or sub-thesaurus. **Thesali** has four individual stems from which all other pathways originate, **Food**, **Flowers**, **Animals** and **Persons** as shown



below

(... indicates 'More Terms'):

Thesali			
Food	Flowers	Animals	Persons
Mutton	Rose	Birds	Persons...
Pudding	Tiger-Lily	...	Passerines
	Royalty		
	...		...

Figure 6–6 Tree structure of thesaurus Thesali

Each tree is diagrammed below with its immediate sub-groupings.

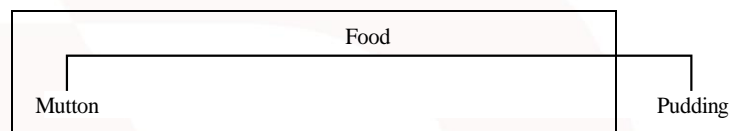


Figure 6–7 The 'Food' tree of thesaurus Thesali

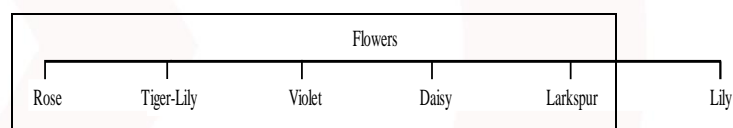


Figure 6–8 The 'Flowers' tree

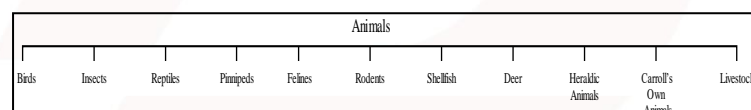


Figure 6–9 The 'Animals' tree

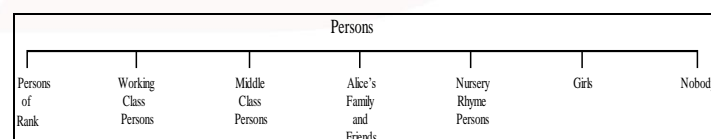


Figure 6–10 The 'Persons' tree

## Exercises in Searching

Try the examples from **Alice** below:

*Example 1:*

```
f ct(#fly) ↵
S=12 <4> Find CT(#fly)
```

finds records having terms which end in 'fly' in the **CT** or **UF** elements, picks the **CT** for each of those records and searches for it in all **PHrase** fields in **Alice**.

*Example 2:*

```
f nt(alice's friends) ↵  
S=13 <2> Find NT(alice's friends)
```

looks for all terms in the 'Alice's Friends' tree, and finds records containing the Narrower Terms (**NTs**) 'Ada' and 'Mabel'.

*Example 3:*

```
f up(alice's sister) ↵  
S=14 <15> Find UP(alice's sister)
```

looks for all terms upwards from 'Alice's Sister' in that tree, and finds records with **PHrase** fields containing both 'Alice's Sister' and its Broader Term 'Alice's Family'.

*Example 4:*

```
f rt(edgar atheling) ↵  
S=15 <2> Find RT(edgar atheling)
```

displays the records where 'Edgar Atheling' or its Related Term 'William the Conqueror' occur in **PHrase** fields.

The same truncating and masking characters can be used as in other **Find** and **Display** orders. The thesaurus records are numbered in the display, and a search order using these numbers will find the **CT** terms of the chosen thesaurus records in the **PHrase** fields of the database.

You may also restrict the searching in the thesaurus to exact matching of entire phrases by surrounding the search term in your order with single quotation marks. Try the order,

```
f bee ↵  
S=16 <6> Find bee
```

TRIP finds such expressions as 'nowhere to *bee* seen', 'Busy *Bee*', 'a regular *bee*', '*bee* good enough', '*bee*-hive' and 'a single *bee*'. Now try:

```
f bt(bee) ↵  
S=17 <29> Find BT(bee)
```

TRIP finds 'Busy Bee' as well as records with **PHrase** fields containing its Broader Term, 'Insects'.

Try this order:

```
f bt('bee') ↵  
"No hits!"
```

This is because the Controlled Term entry in **Thesali** is 'Busy Bee'—there is none for 'Bee'!

You may also override the target specification of the **DEfine** order (**PHrase**, in these examples) temporarily by including a database field name in your search order. To search the field **txt** in **Alice** for the word 'Caterpillar' and its Broader Term 'Insect', use

```
f txt=bt(caterpillar) ↵  
S=18 <12> Find txt=BT(caterpillar)
```

TRIP finds two hit terms, 'Caterpillar' and 'Insects'.

*Note:*

- *You may wonder why phrases such as 'Looking-Glass Insects' and 'Insect' were not found. This is because this search is directed toward the **txt** field, whereas 'Looking-Glass Insects' occurs in **chapter**, a **PHrase** field. Although there are many occurrences of the singular 'insect' in **txt**, since the **BT** of 'Caterpillar' is 'Insects', there is no match.*
- *Also, it is possible to write an order like*

```
f bt(mouse) or bt('domestic cat') ↵  
S=19 <17> Find BT(mouse) OR BT('domestic cat')  
as  
f bt(mouse or 'domestic cat') ↵  
S=20 <17> Find BT(mouse OR 'domestic cat')
```



## Chapter 7: Indirect Searching

In its simplest form, indirect searching involves taking the vocabulary of one field from a set of records in one database and applying these as search terms to another database.

The ability to make indirect searches could be useful in a situation such as this:

A hypothetical medical database called **Cause&Effect** contains records which relate symptoms, disorders and cures, and another fictional database called **Case\_Study** contains a large number of varied case studies.

A doctor has perused all of the case studies which mention **sleep disorders**, and now wishes to find all case studies which mention the **symptoms** of sleep disorders.

He or she can now use an indirect search to find all records in **Cause&Effect** which mention sleep disorders, and the contents of the **symptom** field of the hit records to search the **Case\_Study** database.

### The Indirect Search Process

Indirect searching takes place in three steps:

1. find the desired set of records in the *source database* (the database from which the vocabulary terms are drawn)
2. extract the contents of a single **PHrase** field (the *source field*) from all records found
3. search for these terms in one or more fields of one or more *target databases* (those which are to be searched).

If you are not yet logged on to TRIP, do so now and choose CCL Search mode.

### The DEfine MAP Order

Before giving an indirect search order, you must open the databases in which you want to search and specify the database name and field from which the search terms should be extracted. This is done using **DEfine MAP** (short form: **DE MAP**).

The simplest indirect search using this order is outlined in the series below:

```
bas databasename1 ↵  
de map virtualfieldname = databasename2.fieldname  
↵  
f virtualfieldname(searchterm) ↵
```

The first order (**BASE**) opens up the target database, *databasename1*.

The second order (**DEfine MAP**) names a *virtual field*, which is a field which does not really exist for any database. The virtual field points to (or defines) the database

(*databasename2*) and field within that database (*fieldname*) which will be the source of the vocabulary terms for the indirect search.

The third order (**Find**) does several things:

it searches the **PHrase** and **Text** fields of *databasename2* for all records containing *searchterm*

extracts the vocabulary contained in *fieldname* for those records only

and searches *databasename1* for records containing any of those terms

Let's look at a practical example:

```
bas alice ↵
de map place=corr.scountry ↵
f place(mats) ↵
```

Following the process step by step:

The first order opens the target database **Alice** (475 records).

The second defines a virtual field called place which points to the field scountry in the source database Corr.

The third order searches the PHrase and Text fields of Corr (the default) for all records containing the name mats,

```
BASE corr      (99 records)
Find mats      (60 records)
```

pulls out the vocabulary terms stored in **scountry** for each of these records,

(Display S=n scountry=#, 15 terms)

T=1	<1>	BRD
T=2	<1>	DANMARK
T=3	<1>	ENGLAND
T=4	<1>	FRANKRIKE
T=5	<7>	HOLLAND
T=6	<1>	ICELAND
T=7	<1>	IRELAND
T=8	<1>	PORTUGAL
T=9	<1>	SCHWEDEN
T=10	<1>	SOUTH KOREA
T=11	<33>	SVERIGE
T=12	<6>	SWEDEN

T=13	<2>	UK
T=14	<2>	USA
T=15	<1>	VENEZUELA

and searches **Alice** for all records containing these terms,

```
Find brd OR danmark OR england OR frankrike OR
holland OR iceland OR ireland OR portugal OR
schweden OR u k OR usa OR venezuela      (2
records)
```

The third order can be considered as a function called **place( )**, with **mats** as the argument.

You will be able to view the vocabulary extracted from the **scountry** field of the **Corr** database by using the **Display** order:

**d place(mats) ↵**

which has this result:

```
(Display place (mats), 15 terms)
T=1      <0>      BRD
T=2      <0>      DANMARK
T=3      <2>      ENGLAND
T=4      <0>      FRANKRIKE
T=5      <0>      HOLLAND
T=6      <0>      ICELAND
T=7      <0>      IRELAND
T=8      <0>      PORTUGAL
T=9      <0>      SCHWEDEN
T=10     <0>      SOUTH KOREA
T=11     <0>      SVERIGE
T=12     <0>      SWEDEN
T=13     <0>      U K
T=14     <0>      USA
T=15     <0>      VENEZUELA
```

All terms except 'England' have zero occurrences, meaning that only 'England' produced hits in the target database.

The History box for this series contains:

```
S=1 <475>          BAsE alice
S=2 <0>             DEfine MAP place=Text+PHrase:
                    corr.SCOUNTRY:Text+PHrase
S=3 <2> Find place(mats)
```

In addition to the database and field names, the **DEfine MAP** order has several user-redefinable defaults similar to **DEfine THESaurus** (Chapter 6):

```
1.  DEfine MAP
    place=Text+PHrase:corr.SCOUNTRY:Text+PHrase
```

This portion of the **DEfine** command states that TRIP will search only the **Text** and **PHrase** fields of source database **Corr** for the search term requested (the name **mats**).

Additional possibilities include:

```
DEfine MAP virtualfieldname=Text:...
DEfine MAP virtualfieldname=PHrase:...
```

where only the **Text** or **PHrase** fields of the source database will be searched.

```
2.  DEfine MAP
    place=Text+PHrase:corr.SCOUNTRY:Text+PHrase
```

This part of the order specifies that only the **Text** and **PHrase** fields of target database **Alice** will be used for the final search.

Other options include:

```
DEfine MAP...:Text
DEfine MAP...:PHrase
```

where either **Text** or **PHrase** fields of the target database will be used for final searching.

Refer to the *CCL Reference Guide* for the full form of a **DEfine MAP** order, with its defaults and many variations.

To illustrate some other features of indirect searching, the examples which follow build on the first two steps of a **MAPped** search as shown below:

```
bas carroll ↵
S=4 <24> BAsE carroll

de map people=alice.person ↵
S=5 <0>  DEfine MAP people=Text+PHrase:
        alice.PERSON:Text+PHrase
```

which open the target database **Carroll** (24 records) and create the virtual field **people** as a pointer to source database **Alice** and source field **person**.



The contents of History will be provided beneath each example in this chapter if appropriate.

Try the following orders:

*Example 1:*

**d people(turtle) ↵**

TRIP locates all the records in **Alice** which contain the term **turtle** in any **PHrase** or **TEText** field, extracts the contents of the field **person** for these records, sorts them alphabetically and displays them, giving the number of occurrences in **Carroll** (in any **PHrase** or **TEText** field):

(Display people (turtle), 11 terms)

T=1	<3>	ALICE S SISTER
T=2	<3>	CATERPILLAR
T=3	<7>	DUCHESS
T=4	<4>	GRYPHON
T=5	<4>	KING OF HEARTS
T=6	<3>	LIZARD
T=7	<4>	MARCH HARE
T=8	<3>	MOCK TURTLE
T=9	<7>	MOUSE
T=10	<5>	QUEEN OF HEARTS
T=11	<7>	WHITE RABBIT

*Example 2:*

**f people(turtle) ↵**

S=6 <14> Find people (turtle)

This order finds the terms displayed above in the **PHrase** or **TEText** fields of database **Carroll** and highlights them.

*Example 3:*

**f verse=people(turtle) ↵**

S=7 <2> Find verse=people (turtle)

looks for the terms displayed previously in **Carroll's verse** field.

*Example 4:*

**f speaker=people(turtle) ↵**

S=8 <12> Find speaker=people (turtle)

finds the terms in the **speaker** field.

Example 5:

```
f speaker=people(turtle) and person=march hare ↵
S=9      <4>      Find speaker=people (turtle) AND
person=march hare
```

combines indirect and direct searching.

Example 6:

```
de map speakers=ph:alice.speaker ↵
S=10     <0>      DEfine MAP speakers=PHrase:
                  alice.SPEAKER:Text+PHrase
```

This new **DEfine MAP** order defines the virtual field **speakers** to map from the **speaker** field of **Alice** and specifies that searching in the source database **Carroll** only takes place in **PHrase** fields.

Example 7:

```
d speakers (knave) ↵
```

displays the vocabulary of the field **Alice.Speaker** for the records which contain the term **knave** in any **PHrase** field:

```
(Display speakers (knave), 5 terms)
T=1      <4>      KING OF HEARTS
T=2      <3>      KNAVE OF HEARTS
T=3      <5>      QUEEN OF HEARTS
T=4      <20>     TWO
T=5      <7>      WHITE RABBIT
```

Example 8:

```
f speakers (knave) ↵
S=11     <21>     Find speakers (knave)
```

finds those terms shown above in the database **Carroll** and highlights them.

Example 9:

```
de map speakers=ph:alice.speaker:text ↵
S=12     <0>      DEfine MAP speakers=PHrase:
                  alice.SPEAKER:Text
```

This new **DEfine MAP** order defines the virtual field **speakers** to map from the **speaker** field of **Alice**. It also specifies that source database searching will occur only in **PHrase** fields, and that target database searching takes place in **TEXT** fields.

Example 10:

```
f speakers(knave) ↵
```

```
S=13      <20>      Find speakers (knave)
```

finds those terms shown above in **TExt** fields in the database **Carroll**.

Example 11:

```
f speakers(knave and heart# or queen# AND heart#)  
↵
```

```
S=14      <21>      Find speakers (knave AND heart)  
OR  
                                     (queen# AND heart#)
```

```
f speakers(knave . hearts or dormouse) ↵
```

```
S=15      <20>      Find speakers (knave . hearts OR  
                                     dormouse)
```

The *proximity operator* [.] in the latter example denotes 'separation of terms by zero or one term(s)'.

The argument of the indirect search function **speakers( )** does not have to be a single term, and may contain truncation characters, proximity and logical operators as shown above.

## Exact Phrase Matching

There are two methods of ensuring that the extracted terms produce an exact match in the target database. An exact match means that the content of the subfield in the target phrase field contains nothing more than the **PHrase** or term extracted from the source **PHrase** field.

Exact mapping is indicated by single quotation marks, and could be included in the **DEfine MAP** statement as follows:

```
de map speakers=ph:alice.speaker:'phrase' ↵
```

```
S=16      <0>      DEfine MAP speakers=PHrase:  
                                     alice.SPEAKER:'PHrase'
```

or included in a **Find** order:

```
f speakers('knave') ↵
```

```
S=17      <9>      Find speakers ('knave')
```

The exact matching takes place in the target database in both orders.

## Reference to an Earlier Search

The **S=n** qualifier is used to refer to the results of a previous search. Using the **Find** order in the source database which produced search result number three, the following order will reproduce a display list of the extracted terms:

```
d s=3.speakers ↵
(Display S=3.speakers, 1 term)
T=1      <4>      HUMPTY DUMPTY
```

and this one finds the records that contained those terms:

```
f s=3.speakers ↵
S=18     <4>     Find S=3.speakers
```

In these cases, records were first located in the source database in search number three. The terms were then extracted from the **speaker** field in those records from the source database that are part of search result number three. The search and the display of the extracted terms in the phrase fields of the target database followed.

No argument is required.

## Broadening a Search Within a Database

As already mentioned, the target of an indirect search may be a cluster, i.e. a number of databases opened together which may contain the source database. Indeed, the target may be identical to the source, in which case each indirect search automatically and immediately broadens the search in the target database. This can be demonstrated using the **Alice** database and the following example.

Suppose the Jabberwocky is found murdered in his bed, and a list of suspects is required. The following orders would generate some leads:

```
bas alice ↵
S=19 <475> BASe alice
f jabberwock# ↵
S=20 <1> Find jabberwock#
```

This gives only one record, and the following order points the finger at 'Humpty Dumpty':

```
d s=0 person=# ↵
(Display S=20 person=#, 2 terms)
T=1      <1>      HUMPTY DUMPTY
T=2      <1>      JABBERWOCK
```

By expanding the search using an indirect search order, a larger number of suspects is generated:

```
de map suspect=alice.person ↵
```

```
S=21      <0>      Define MAP suspect=Text +  
PHrase:  
                        alice.PERSON:Text+PHrase
```

```
f suspect(jabberwock#) ↵
```

```
S=22      <32>      Find suspect(jabberwock#)
```

```
d s=0.suspect ↵
```

```
(Display S=22.suspect, 14 terms)
```

```
T=1      <1>      BOROGOVE  
T=2      <3>      CARPENTER  
T=3      <13>     DINAH  
T=4      <32>     HUMPTY DUMPTY  
T=5      <1>      JABBERWOCK  
T=6      <16>     KITTY  
T=7      <1>      RATH  
T=8      <51>     RED QUEEN  
T=9      <1>      TOVE  
T=10     <24>     TWEEDLEDEE  
T=11     <23>     TWEEDLEDUM  
=12      <4>      WALRUS  
T=13     <29>     WHITE KING  
T=14     <54>     WHITE QUEEN
```

## Internal Transaction Sets

There is a simpler way to apply terms extracted from a search result set as search terms to the same database. In this kind of searching, the contents of one **PHrase** field (for a set of hit records) becomes the working or transaction set of terms for a further search. Although this works similarly to indirect searching from one database to another, as the source **PHrase** field can be specified directly in the **Find** or **Display** order, no **DEfine MAP** order is required.

Enter these CCL statements as preparation for the upcoming exercises:

```
bas corr ↵
S=23      <99>      BAsE corr

f #rip ↵
S=24      <86>      Find #rip

f and system ↵
S=25      <60>      Find S=24 AND system

f and data# ↵
S=26      <29>      Find S=25 AND data#
```

Now consider these examples:

*Example 1:*

```
d rname=26.sname ↵
(Display rname=26.sname, 11 terms)

T=1      <1>      DAVID HALL
T=2      <0>      ERIC W SMITH
T=3      <3>      JAN HULTGREN
T=4      <1>      JAN SVENDSEN
T=5      <14>     MATS G LINDQUIST
T=6      <5>      MATS LÖFSTRÖM
T=7      <1>      MR ADAM YOUNG
T=8      <3>      ÖRJAN LERINGE
T=9      <1>      PETER PANNENBEIN
T=10     <6>      PIET B SCHOLTEN
T=11     <2>      ROLF LARSSON
```

This order extracts all of the terms in the **sname** (sender) field of the records located by the twenty-sixth search. The terms are then sorted alphabetically and presented in a **Display** list, indicating for each term the number of records where it occurs in the **rname** (recipient) field.

*Example 2:*

```
f rname=0.sname ↵  
S=27      <36>      Find rname=26.sname
```

This order extracts the terms in **sname** in the records found by the most recent search, and searches for them in **rname**.

*Example 3:*

```
f (trip or tdbbs) and te=0.rname ↵  
S=28      <14>      Find (trip OR tdbbs) AND  
TExt=27.rname
```

This order locates the records with the words **trip** or **tdbs**, as well as **TExt** occurrences of **rname** terms from the records found by the last search.

*Example 4:*

```
d 0.rname ↵  
(Display 28.rname, 14 terms)  
çT=1      <7>      DR A LAVER  
T=2       <2>      DR E W HATHAWAY  
T=3       <1>      ERIK ANDERSSON  
T=4       <2>      JAN SVENDSEN  
T=5       <2>      KRISTINN ASGRIMSDOTTIR  
T=6       <2>      LAURA HORNEY  
T=7       <2>      LIN CHENG  
T=8       <47>     MATS G LINDQUIST  
T=9       <10>     MATS LÖFSTRÖM  
T=10      <1>      MR PIERRE BOHAN  
T=11      <3>      ROBERT GRÜN  
T=12      <1>      SHEN QUIXAN  
T=13      <1>      STEVE JACKSON  
T=14      <2>      TED COOK
```

This order displays a sorted list of all the different names in the field **rname** in the records of the latest search.

*Example 5:*

```
f 28.rname ↵  
S=29      <64>      Find 28.rname
```

This order locates all records that contain any one of the names in the **rname** field of the twenty-eighth search.

The last two **Find** and **Display** orders above are applied to **Text** and **Phrase** fields as usual, unless this default has been changed by a **Define View** order.

## External Transaction Sets

In the indirect search examples seen so far, the transaction set has been generated as the contents of a particular **Phrase** field, for a particular result set.

In TRIP, the transaction set can also be obtained from an ordinary text file, where each line of the text file constitutes a term. This search function was introduced to enable TRIP searching with terms acquired from searches in other systems, and can also be used to store search profiles applicable to several searches.

The form of a **Find** or **Display** order follows the standard format for thesaurus and indirect searching orders. The modifier **File** signals the use of an external transaction set, and the name of the file is surrounded by parentheses.

Here is a sample **Find File** order using a file called 'Mylist.DAT':

```
Find FILE(mylist.dat) ↵
```

which contains a list of terms to be searched for. Indirect searching of this kind can be used in the same way as other search orders:

```
Find PHrase=FILE(mylist.dat) AND day>1986-10-31 ↵
```

```
Find S=0 OR new_name=FILE(mylist.dat) ↵
```

```
Display rname=FILE(mylist.dat) ↵
```

This is ordinary text searching, and the usual rules and defaults apply.

The specification of the filename may vary depending on the host operating system. However, if the file is not in the directory from which TRIP was started, the full file path name should be included. For example:

```
Find FILE(/users/myuser/mylist.dat) ↵
```

```
Find FILE(C:\mydir\mylist.dat) ↵
```

are examples of UNIX and Windows pathnames, respectively.

*Note:*

*The above mentioned file paths point to files that exist on the TRIPsystem server and not on the local system.*

## Maximum Limits

Indirect **Find** and **Display** orders are governed by the same maximum limits as direct **Find** and **Display** orders. The number of terms extracted from the **Phrase** field of the source database is also governed by the **Display** limit.



The number of hit records in the source database from which these terms are drawn also has a limit. The initial value is 1000, but it may be changed using a **DEfine MAP MAXimum** order (short form: **DE MAP MAX**) such as:

```
de map max=2000 ↵
```

TRIP responds with the message “New limit for MAP set to 2000.”





## Chapter 8: Head and Part Records

A record may exist as a two-level tree structure, composed of a *head* or *main record* and any number of *part* or *sub-records*. If head and part records have been included in the design of any particular database, each field is by definition either a head or a part field for that database.

The head record, which includes the *head fields*, is described by the contents of these fields and generally contains information which is relevant to all its part or sub-records. The part records (each of which holds one or more of the *part fields*) are described by the contents of those fields, and usually contain information which is applicable to that sub-record only. Main records with sub-records are illustrated in the diagram that follows.

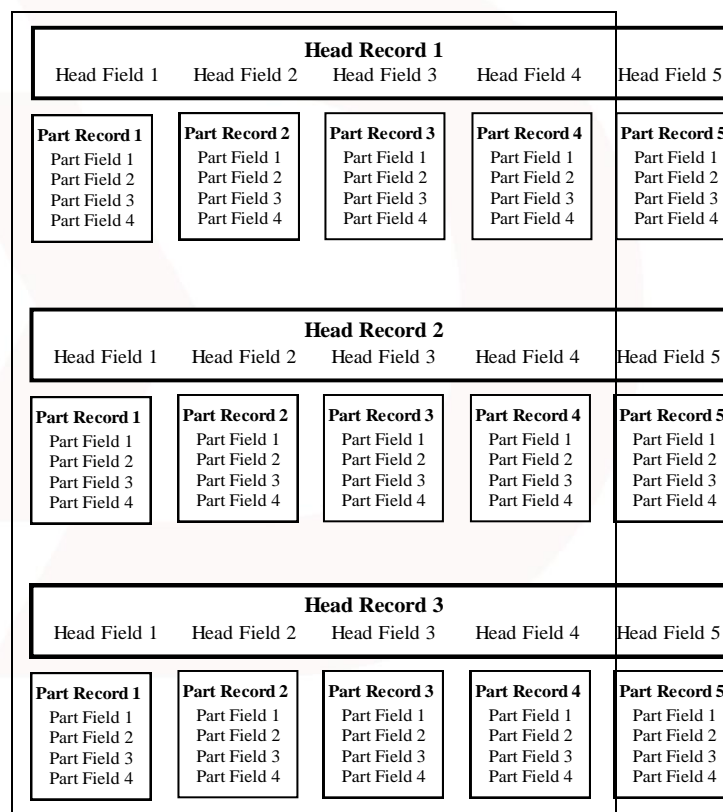


Figure 8–1 The relationship between head and part records

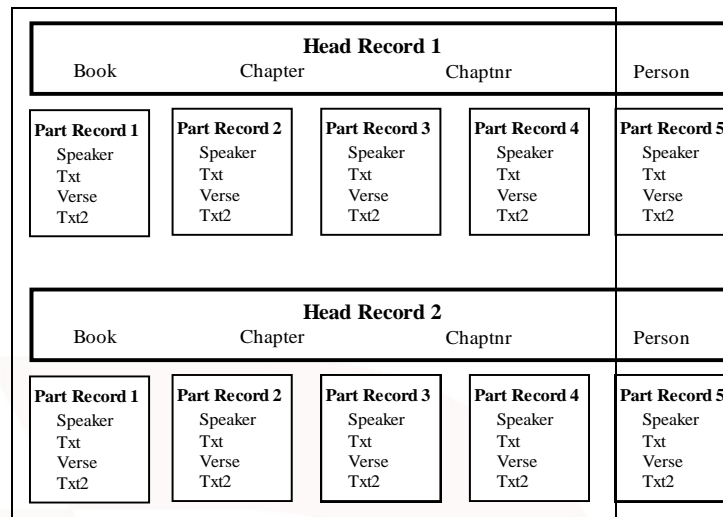
We will use the demonstration database **Carroll** as an example.

Log on to TRIP, enter **CCL Search** mode and request to see the structure of this database with

```
st carroll ↵
```

As you can see in the figure below, the content of this database is similar to that of database **Alice**, however the information is arranged a bit differently. Head records made up of head fields now contain all of the *chapter information*—number and

heading, the list of persons acting in the text and a new field, the title of the book from which the text was taken. The part fields within the part records hold the *paragraph information*, and include the speakers in the text as well as all of the text fields.



**Figure 8–2 Carroll's head and part record structure**

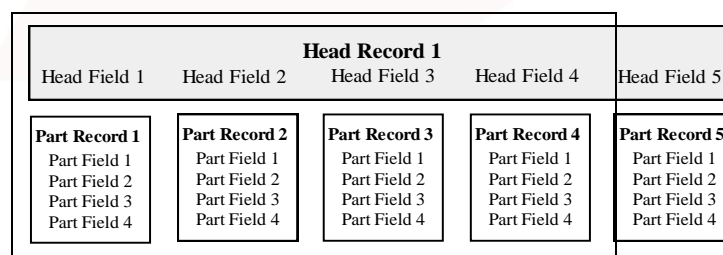
Each of the twenty-four main (chapter) records in **Carroll** now has from one to thirty-seven sub-(paragraph) records clustered beneath it.

## Defining Terms

In order to describe some of the search techniques, we must first define some terminology regarding head and part records. Consider the record outlined in Figure 8–3, which has five part records.

The terms used for records with sub-records are:

The head record or record head, which is made up of all of the head fields.



**Figure 8–3 A head record**

The part record or record part, consisting of one set of part fields.

Head Record 1				
Head Field 1	Head Field 2	Head Field 3	Head Field 4	Head Field 5
<b>Part Record 1</b>	<b>Part Record 2</b>	<b>Part Record 3</b>	<b>Part Record 4</b>	<b>Part Record 5</b>
Part Field 1	Part Field 1	Part Field 1	Part Field 1	Part Field 1
Part Field 2	Part Field 2	Part Field 2	Part Field 2	Part Field 2
Part Field 3	Part Field 3	Part Field 3	Part Field 3	Part Field 3
Part Field 4	Part Field 4	Part Field 4	Part Field 4	Part Field 4

**Figure 8–4 A part record**

Record entity 1, 2, 3 etc. represent the union (or sum) of head record 1 and part record 1, head record 1 and part record 2, head record 1 and part record 3, etc.

Head Record 1				
Head Field 1	Head Field 2	Head Field 3	Head Field 4	Head Field 5
<b>Part Record 1</b>	<b>Part Record 2</b>	<b>Part Record 3</b>	<b>Part Record 4</b>	<b>Part Record 5</b>
Part Field 1	Part Field 1	Part Field 1	Part Field 1	Part Field 1
Part Field 2	Part Field 2	Part Field 2	Part Field 2	Part Field 2
Part Field 3	Part Field 3	Part Field 3	Part Field 3	Part Field 3
Part Field 4	Part Field 4	Part Field 4	Part Field 4	Part Field 4

**Figure 8–5 A record entity**

A record is the union of the head record and all of its part records.

Head Record 1				
Head Field 1	Head Field 2	Head Field 3	Head Field 4	Head Field 5
<b>Part Record 1</b>	<b>Part Record 2</b>	<b>Part Record 3</b>	<b>Part Record 4</b>	<b>Part Record 5</b>
Part Field 1	Part Field 1	Part Field 1	Part Field 1	Part Field 1
Part Field 2	Part Field 2	Part Field 2	Part Field 2	Part Field 2
Part Field 3	Part Field 3	Part Field 3	Part Field 3	Part Field 3
Part Field 4	Part Field 4	Part Field 4	Part Field 4	Part Field 4

**Figure 8–6 A record**

Components are the unit records (individual head and part records) in the database.

Head Record 1				
Head Field 1	Head Field 2	Head Field 3	Head Field 4	Head Field 5
<b>Part Record 1</b>	<b>Part Record 2</b>	<b>Part Record 3</b>	<b>Part Record 4</b>	<b>Part Record 5</b>
Part Field 1	Part Field 1	Part Field 1	Part Field 1	Part Field 1
Part Field 2	Part Field 2	Part Field 2	Part Field 2	Part Field 2
Part Field 3	Part Field 3	Part Field 3	Part Field 3	Part Field 3
Part Field 4	Part Field 4	Part Field 4	Part Field 4	Part Field 4

**Figure 8–7 Components of a record**

## Searching

Several operators not previously discussed make searching of databases with part records more discriminating. These are:

Operator	Signifying
<b>AND.R</b>	<b>AND</b> within a record (head + all parts)
<b>NOT.R</b>	<b>NOT</b> within a record (head + all parts)
<b>AND.E</b>	<b>AND</b> within an entity (head + one part)
<b>NOT.E</b>	<b>NOT</b> within an entity (head + one part)
<b>AND.C</b>	<b>AND</b> within a component (head or part)
<b>NOT.C</b>	<b>NOT</b> within a component (head or part)

Figure 8–8 Part record operators

## Examples

To work the following exercises, open database **Carroll** using:

```
bas carroll ↵  
S=1      <24>      BAsE carroll
```

Give the order:

```
f white bread and.r brown bread ↵  
S=2      <1>      Find white bread AND.R brown  
bread)
```

which finds all records where the terms ‘white bread’ and ‘brown bread’ are mentioned anywhere in the same record, as it would in a database without part records.

Now try:

```
f looking glass and.e insect ↵  
S=3      <1>      Find looking glass AND.E insect
```

This example finds all records in which the terms ‘looking glass’ and ‘insect’ are found in any head + part record pairing or entity.

DEfine this Vlew:

```
de vi view_people=person,speaker ↵
```

```
S=4      <0>      DEfine VView view_people=person,  
speaker
```

and type in:

```
f view_people=white knight and.e red knight ↵
```

```
S=5      <1>      Find view_people=white knight  
AND.E  
red knight
```

This request finds all records containing 'White Knight' and 'Red Knight' in a head record/part record pair, either in the **person** field (head portion) or the **speaker** field (part portion).

Make this request:

```
f rabbit and.c kid gloves ↵
```

```
S=6      <2>      Find rabbit AND.C kid gloves
```

which finds 'rabbit' and 'kid gloves' in the same head or part record.

The operators **AND** and **NOT** are by default equivalent to **AND.E** and **NOT.E**, but you may change this with one of several **DEfine** orders:

```
de and=and.r ↵
```

```
de and=and.c ↵
```

```
de and=and.e ↵
```

These statements change the default for both **AND** and **NOT** so that they will always work within the same domain, whether it be entities, records, or components.

## Output and Sorting

### Output

The default output format for databases employing part records has been programmed to output *all* sub-records of a hit record in search results, not only those which include hit terms. This can make browsing the output from a search result unwieldy if each head record contains many parts and you are not using **Show FOCUS**. To make browsing easier it is possible to predefine one or more output formats, so that a head-part database will output only part records containing hit terms. If there is a database which uses head and part records at your installation, contact your Application Manager to see if this option is available.

### Sorting

If your **Show** request includes a **SORT** on head fields only, sorting is performed as expected, on the fields and in the manner you request. If you wish to **SORT** on one or more part fields, there are two options:

1. The **SORT** modifier, which sorts records according to the contents of the field in the normal way and outputs records in the order required.
2. The **PART SORT** (short form: **PART SOR**), which sorts entities according to the content of the part records and outputs entities sorted on part records.

A 'general' **SORT** uses the usual sort function (in combination with the default output format) and lists each head followed by all parts, regardless of whether or not the target field contains information.

A **PART SORT** arranges each record by *entity*, and displays only those parts which include data.

In special cases the System Manager may have set up a 'Hit List' function, which specifies that only the parts containing hit terms will be output.

There may be a complex relationship between sort functions and output formats—see your System Manager for further details.

To illustrate, type in this statement:

```
f speaker=(mouse or dormouse) not speaker=mad  
hatter ↵  
S=7          <4>          Find speaker=(mouse OR dormouse)  
NOT  
                                speaker=mad hatter
```

TRIP finds four records (with a combined total of fifteen part records) that match the criteria given in the order above.

When the search result is output using the normal **SORT** modifier (Figure 8-61, overleaf, at left), all fifty part records having entries in the **speaker** field are included, whether or not they contain hit terms.



When the output is generated using **PART SORT** (Figure 8-61, right), however, only the fifteen hit parts are shown. For emphasis, hits are shown in boldface and italics.

Show SORT=speaker format=speaker		Show PART SORT= speaker format=speaker	
Record—	Record—	Part	SPEAKER:
Part	SPEAKER:	Part	SPEAKER:
2-3	White Rabbit	3-9	Dodo, <b><i>Mouse</i></b>
2-5	Alice's Family	7-14	<b><i>Dormouse</i></b>
2-12	<b><i>Mouse</i></b>	11-10	<b><i>Dormouse</i></b>
2-13	<b><i>Mouse</i></b>	11-11	<b><i>Dormouse</i></b>
2-14	<b><i>Mouse</i></b>	11-18	King of Hearts, Cook, White Rabbit, <b><i>Dormouse</i></b> , Queen of Hearts
3-1	Lory	3-4	Lory, <b><i>Mouse</i></b> , Duck
3-2	<b><i>Mouse</i></b>	3-13	<b><i>Mouse</i></b> , Lory, Crab, Crab's daughter
3-3	<b><i>Mouse</i></b>	2-12	<b><i>Mouse</i></b>
3-4	Lory, <b><i>Mouse</i></b> , Duck	2-13	<b><i>Mouse</i></b>
3-5	<b><i>Mouse</i></b>	2-14	<b><i>Mouse</i></b>
3-6	Dodo, Eaglet	3-2	<b><i>Mouse</i></b>
3-7	Dodo	3-3	<b><i>Mouse</i></b>
3-8	Dodo	3-5	<b><i>Mouse</i></b>
3-9	Dodo, <b><i>Mouse</i></b>	3-10	<b><i>Mouse</i></b>
3-10	<b><i>Mouse</i></b>	3-12	<b><i>Mouse</i></b>
3-12	<b><i>Mouse</i></b>		
3-13	<b><i>Mouse</i></b> , Lory, Crab, Crab's daughter		
3-14	Lory, Magpie, Canary		
7-1	March Hare, Mad Hatter		
7-2	March Hare		
7-3	March Hare, Mad Hatter		
7-4	March Hare, Mad Hatter, Dormouse		
7-5	March Hare, Mad Hatter		
7-6	March Hare, Mad Hatter		
7-7	Mad Hatter, Dormouse		
7-8	March Hare, Mad Hatter		
7-9	March Hare, Mad Hatter		
7-10	Mad Hatter		
7-11	Mad Hatter, Dormouse		
7-12	Mad Hatter		
7-13	March Hare, Mad Hatter, Dormouse		
7-14	<b><i>Dormouse</i></b>		
7-15	March Hare, Mad Hatter		
7-16	March Hare, Mad Hatter, Dormouse		
7-17	Mad Hatter, Dormouse		
7-18	Mad Hatter, Dormouse		
7-19	Mad Hatter, Dormouse, March Hare		

11-4	Gryphon, White Rabbit
11-6	King of Hearts, White Rabbit
11-7	King of Hearts, Mad Hatter, White Rabbit
11-8	King of Hearts, Mad Hatter, White Rabbit, Dormouse, March Hare
11-9	King of Hearts
11-10	<b>Dormouse</b>
11-11	<b>Dormouse</b>
11-12	King of Hearts, Mad Hatter
11-13	King of Hearts, Mad Hatter, March Hare
11-14	Mad Hatter, King of Hearts
11-16	King of Hearts, Mad Hatter, Queen of Hearts
11-17	King of Hearts, Cook, White Rabbit
11-18	King of Hearts, Cook, White Rabbit, <b>Dormouse</b> , Queen of Hearts
11-19	King of Hearts, White Rabbit

**Figure 8-9 PART SORT output**

You will notice that the contents of **speaker** apparently were not alphabetized in the example using normal **SORT** (top of chart, left). These terms were indeed sorted, but perhaps not in the manner one would expect.

When using normal **SORT** on part fields, TRIP first examines the first term in each target part field in a hit record. It then alphabetizes the hit record using *only that term*. Using Record 2 from the example above (at left), TRIP scans the ‘Speaker’ list in each part record:

Record 2

Part 3:	SPEAKER:	White Rabbit
Part 5:	SPEAKER:	Alice’s family
Part 12:	SPEAKER:	Mouse
Part 13:	SPEAKER:	Mouse
Part 14:	SPEAKER:	Mouse

alphabetizes the part record list:

Record 2

Part 5:	SPEAKER:	Alice’s family
Part 12:	SPEAKER:	Mouse
Part 13:	SPEAKER:	Mouse
Part 14:	SPEAKER:	Mouse
Part 3:	SPEAKER:	White Rabbit

and selects the contents of the first field in the alphabetized list as the ‘part field representative’ for that hit record, to be used in sorting the final list:

Record 2

Part 5: **SPEAKER:** *Alice's family*

Part 12: **SPEAKER:** Mouse

Part 13: **SPEAKER:** Mouse

Part 14: **SPEAKER:** Mouse

Part 3: **SPEAKER:** White Rabbit

If two or more part fields in a part record have identical contents (for example, Parts 12–14 above all contain 'Mouse'), then the parts are ordered by part number.

Here are the final part field representatives for each of the four hit records from the previous example:

Record 2, Part 5: **SPEAKER:** *Alice's family*

Record 3, Part 7 **SPEAKER:** *Dodo*

Record 7, Part 14: **SPEAKER:** *Dormouse*

Record 11, Part 10: **SPEAKER:** *Dormouse*

If two or more part records have identical part field representatives (for example, Parts 10 and 14 above are both 'Dormouse'), then the records are ordered by record number.

The main points to remember regarding head/part records are:

TRIP finds only entire records; not head records or part records, but whole records.

The **PART SORT** modifier sorts and shows the output by entity, which is neither output nor used for sorting if it is not included in the hits.



# Part 3:

## Data Entry





## Chapter 9: Data Entry

In TRIP, data entry forms are used for adding records to, modifying records in and deleting records from a database, one record at a time. A data entry form is simply a 'window' into a database and consists of literals (fixed text) and a number of entry boxes, each of which is linked to a field in the database to which it writes.

### Entry Form Field Characteristics

The way in which a field is used is affected by both the type of field in the database and the characteristics of the field in the entry form. These may include traits such as validation, default values, no write access or the ability to retain the value of previous records, some of which are related to database field type, while others are type-independent.

Although each entry form field must be tied to a field on the database, the value need not necessarily be written to the database when the rest of the record is stored. Conversely, each database field need not be linked to a field on the entry form. For reasons of database security various classes of users can then be prohibited from accessing certain fields, or even of knowing of their existence.

### Default Values

It is possible to instruct TRIP to automatically insert one of several default values into an entry form field. These defaults include:

- Current date
- Current time
- Timestamp
- TRIP/TDBS user name
- Operating System user name
- Application-dependent custom default values

Depending on how the field was defined in the entry form design, the system may enter these values either at the time of record creation or record modification. If a default value is provided when a record is updated, it may be entered as the only subfield or paragraph in that field, either being inserted at the beginning of the field or appended to it.

We will be using the data entry form 'Full' for the demonstration database **Corr** to complete the exercises in this chapter. The **modified**, **moddate** and **modtime** fields in this form all have their values defaulted.

## Data Checking

TRIP checks for errors just before a record is saved, that is, written to the database. If an error is detected an error message appears, and the user is returned to the entry form with the cursor in the erroneous field. You will be able to test this later on by attempting to enter a value such as 'abc' in **Corr's day** field, which will result in the error message "Invalid DATE."

There are three types of data checking: for mandatory values, value matching and pattern matching.

### Mandatory Values

A *mandatory* field is one which must have a value, or TRIP will not save the record to the database. Fields are made mandatory in the database design, rather than via the entry form. Use the **STatus** command to find out which fields (if any) have been defined as required; a value of 'Y' in the 'Mand' column marks a field as compulsory. **Corr's day** field is an example of a mandatory field.

### Value-Matching

*Value-matched fields* are those where only certain values are allowed for the field, for example, '1', '2' or '3'.

### Pattern-Matching

A simple example of a *pattern-matched field* is **day**, whose values must follow the date format specified in the user profile of the person creating and/or modifying a record. More complex examples include vehicle number plates or product codes which must be of some specified form such as **aaa999-a99**, where 'a' represents an alphabetic character which must be present, and '9' represents a numeric, e.g. ABC123-D45.

To help detect spelling mistakes, a field may also be defined as having the attribute *Flag First Occurrence*. This means that when a new value is entered that has not been written to that field before, TRIP gives a message to that effect.

## Long Phrase Field

Each subfield of a **PHrase** field can hold up to 255 characters, even though the corresponding field on the entry form is unlikely to be this long. A *Long PHrase entry field* allows the user to continue typing up to the limit of 255 characters, which then acts as a scrolling 'window' on the database field. When approaching the left or right edges of the field with the <Arrow> keys, all hidden text slides into view.

## Protected Fields

Any entry form field may be *protected*, that is, defined as being readable only. The cursor will not enter these field boxes in the entry form, but instead passes over them to the next unprotected one. The same is true of an unprotected field on a database to which the user has no write access.



This is generally used to protect defaulted fields such as the user name and date and time of entry, in order to create and/or maintain an audit trail. The **modified**, **moddate** and **modtime** fields of search form 'Full' are examples of protected or read-only fields. This feature may also be used where there is more than one entry form for a database, where users may be allowed to write to certain fields but only read the contents of others.

## Sticky Fields

When adding a series of records, a *sticky field* retains its value from one record to the next during a data entry session. Although TRIP provides this value automatically it may be changed or deleted, and if changed, the next record will recall the 'new' value. These are of two types, *immediate* and *on-request*.

### Immediate Sticky Fields

These fields are 'always' sticky, that is, the last value entered for that field during that entry session is automatically inserted into the proper field whenever a new record is begun.

### On-Request Sticky Fields

This sticky field is 'recallable', the field remaining blank unless you use <Gold><R> (for <Recall>) to restore the previous value or enter something new.

## Listing Available Data Entry Forms

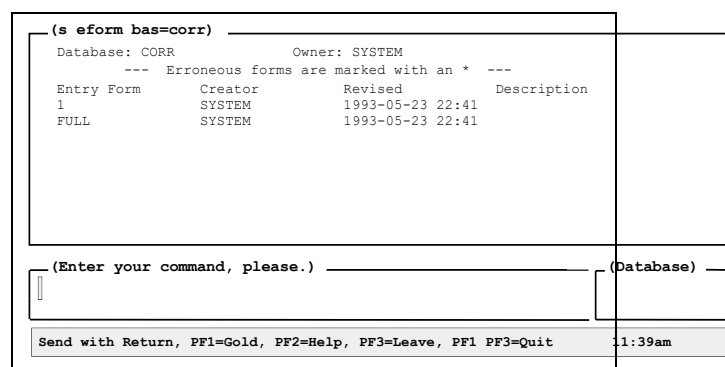
To list all data entry forms to which you have access for any database, log on to TRIP and enter CCL Search. On the Command line enter the **Show EForm** (short form: **S EF**) command

```
s ef bas=databasename ↵
```

As we will be using the demonstration database **Corr** for the exercises in this chapter, type in the command below for this database:

```
s ef bas=corr ↵
```

The **Show EForm** screen appears:



```
(s ef bas=corr)
Database: CORR          Owner: SYSTEM
--- Erroneous forms are marked with an * ---
Entry Form  Creator      Revised      Description
1           SYSTEM       1993-05-23 22:41
FULL        SYSTEM       1993-05-23 22:41

(Enter your command, please.)
Database)

Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit 11:39am
```

Figure 9–1 The Show EForm screen

in which you can read the name of each entry form and its creator, the date and time of last revision and a short description (optional).

Use **Status** to find out which entry form is the default, that is, the one that will be presented automatically whenever you access data entry (unless you request otherwise). Information regarding entry forms available for **Corr** and its designated default entry form follows (status box shading added for emphasis).

```
(st)
Data base: CORR          Design created: 1992-10-19   10:03:01
Owner:      SYSTEM      Design revised: 1993-05-23    22:41:12
Number of records: 99    Last update:      1992-10-19   14:30:15
                          Last index:      1993-05-24    8:47:25

Description: A collection of slightly edited letters and telexes to and from
Paralog

Default format:      1
Default entry form:  1
Formats available:   1, 2
Entry forms available: 1, FULL

Files: TRIP$DEMO:CORR.BAF
      TRIP$DEMO:CORR.BIF
      TRIP$DEMO:CORR.VIF
      ..>>

(Enter your command, please.) (Database) CORR

Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit 11:39am
```

Figure 9–2 The Status Corr screen

## Using Entry Forms

You can access data entry directly from the system prompt, enter via the CCL Command line or use the **Data Entry** option on the Primary Option Menu.

### Starting Entry From The System Prompt

To add records to a database, you may start a data entry form from the system prompt using this command:

```
trip -e add -C 'bas databasename' ↵
```

This statement calls TRIP, takes you directly into data entry (option **e**) using the 'Add' option (short form: **A**). It instructs TRIP to open the database of your choice using option **C**, the **BASE** command and the database name.

(Instructions for **Modify** and **Delete** appear in subsequent sections).

The default entry form will be opened.

### Starting Entry From CCL

If you are in **Show Entry Form** or **Status**, press <Leave> or <Gold><H> to return to the Command Line.

If the entry form you would like to use has not been defined as the default form, you can request this for the current TRIP session using **Define EFORM** (short form: **DE EF**):

```
de ef=entryformname ↵
```

where *entryformname* is the name of the data entry form you wish to designate as default.

To view any entry form definitions that may have been made previously, use

```
de? ↵
```

Sentences in the **DEfine** listing beginning with '**EFORM =**' contain the name(s) of the specified default(s).

If the database you wish to write to has already been opened, start data entry from CCL Search mode using **EDit INSert** (short form: **ED INS**) on the Command Line:

```
ed ins ↵
```

If it is not, or if you need to write to a multifile or cluster database, use

```
ed ins bas=databasename ↵
```

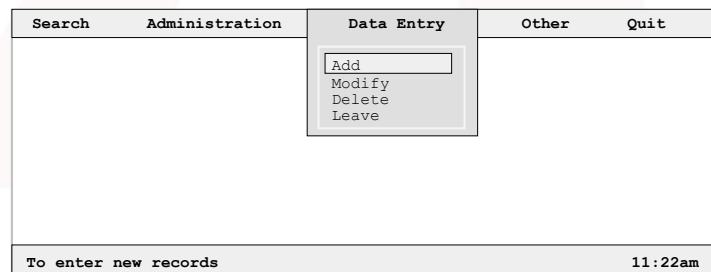
where *databasename* is the name of the database you wish to edit. Try this now:

```
ed ins bas=corr ↵
```

You are brought immediately into the default entry form for the database you have named. Use <Leave> to return to the command line.

## Starting Entry From the Primary Option Menu

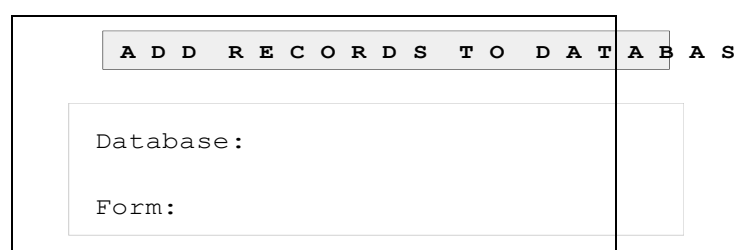
If you are in **Show EForm** or **SStatus**, press <Leave> or <Gold><H> to return to the Command Line. Press <Leave> again to restore the Primary Option Menu. Cursor over to the Data Entry option on the Primary Option Menu and press ↵ or <↓ Arrow> to activate the drop-down or sub-menu.



Search	Administration	Data Entry	Other	Quit
		<div> Add  Modify  Delete  Leave </div>		
To enter new records			11:22am	

Figure 9–3 The data entry submenu screen

The cursor will be positioned to the left of 'Add'. Press ↵ to bring up the 'Add Records To Database' screen.



A D D R E C O R D S T O D A T A B A S E

Database:
Form:

Figure 9–4 The Add Records box

You may press <Leave> to exit 'Add Records' at any time.

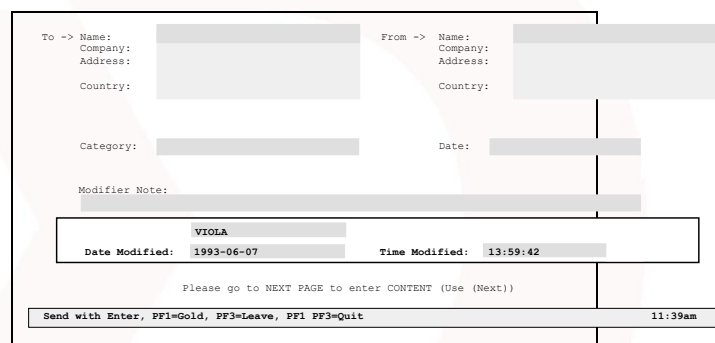
We will use the data entry form 'Full' for database **Corr** for these examples.

In the Add Records box, enter the database name (**Corr**) at the 'Database' prompt and press **↵**, **<Tab>** or **<↓ Arrow>**. TRIP will check that the database exists and that you are allowed to write to it. If you were not granted write privileges for this database, you will receive the message "No access to database *databasename*." If you make a typographical error, TRIP will respond with "Database *databasename* not found."

The name of the entry form which has been designated the default (here it is '1') will be automatically printed in the field marked 'Form:'. If the default entry form is the one you wish to use,

press **↵**. If it is not, overtype the default form name with that of the one you want to open ('Full') at the 'Form' prompt and press **↵**. If you mistype here the message "Data entry form *dataentryformname* for CORR not found." appears.

The Data Entry window will now be opened and the form cleared of any previously-entered information, as seen below.



**Figure 9–5 The Data Entry screen 'Full', screen one of two**

It is a good idea to explore a new entry form before using it. Move around the entry fields using **<Tab>** to acquaint yourself with the cursor path. In this particular form the cursor has been instructed to move from left to right and top to bottom through the screen, the order of fields in the cursor path being fixed by the form design. You will notice that the cursor does not enter the bottom-most box, which contains the modifier's username, 'Date Modified:' and 'Time Modified:'. The cursor does not move into a field to which access is restricted, and as these fields have been defined to fill automatically with the entry person's name and the date and time of entry, there is no need to write to them.

Scan the literals (fixed screen text or labels) to see what sort of information is appropriate to insert in each field. If you are not sure what to enter in a field, move the cursor to it and press the **<Help>** key; the field name, field type and a comment (in this case, the field description) will be displayed. Press **<Leave>** to return to the entry form when you are ready.

To proceed to the second screen of this form use **Next** as instructed at the bottom of the screen.

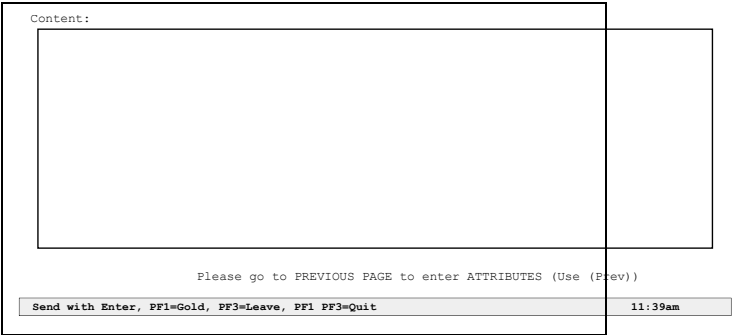


Figure 9–6 The Data Entry screen ‘Full’, screen two of two

### Editing Keys for Data Entry

Data entry is adapted to the conventions of a VT100 terminal keypad. The default mode is insert, with the toggle to overwrite mode being **<CTRL><A>**. The cursor movement keys are:

Next Field	<b>&lt;Tab&gt;</b>
Previous field	<b>&lt;Backspace&gt;</b>
Next line of field	<b>&lt;↓ Arrow&gt;</b>
Previous line of field	<b>&lt;↑ Arrow&gt;</b>
One character forward	<b>&lt;→ Arrow&gt;</b>
One character back	<b>&lt;← Arrow&gt;</b>
Delete character (back)	<b>&lt;Delete&gt;</b>

The VT Keyboard’s numeric keypad contains most of the data entry keys.

Note: See Appendix B for details on using the editing keys on non-VT keyboards.

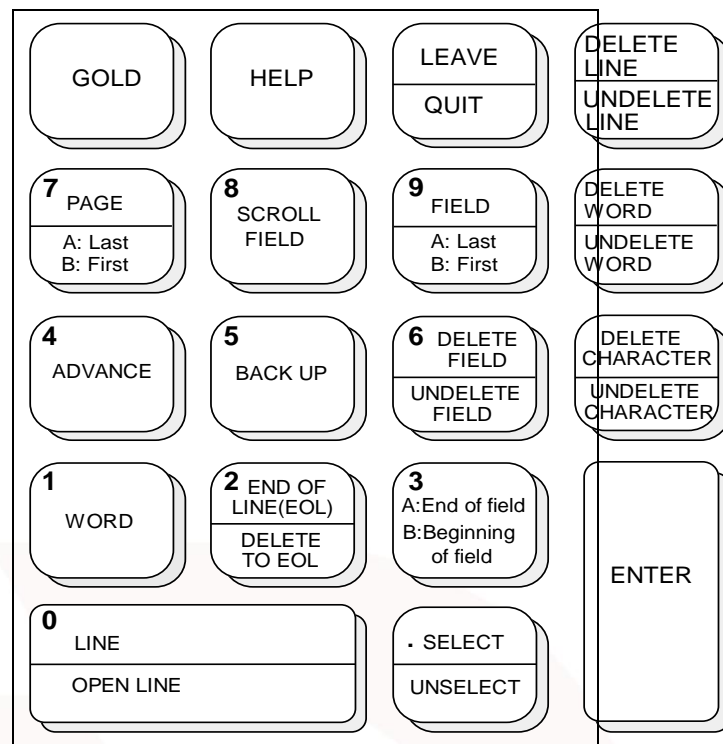


Figure 9-7 The Number Keypad data entry keys

The keys **<Advance>** and **<Back Up>** change the direction of cursor movements, and affect the **<Page>**, **<Field>**, **<Word>**, **<End of Line>**, **<End of Field>**, **<Scroll Field>** and **<Character>** keys. The **<Delete>** keys all work forward, and are not affected by **<Advance>** and **<Back>**. The key **<Scroll Field>** moves the cursor up or down within a field.

Certain keys are marked with two functions, the upper one being the default, while the lower one is activated when pressed immediately after **<Gold>**.

For example, **<Keypad 0>** moves the cursor to the next subfield within a **PHrase** field (or the next line in a **TEText** field).

**<Gold><Keypad 0>** inserts a blank line immediately preceding the sub-field in which the cursor is positioned (in **PHrase** fields), or the next line (**TEText** fields).

**<Gold><Page>** moves the cursor to the last page of the entry form if **<Advance>** is active, and to the first page if **<Back Up>** has been selected.

The **<Delete>** keys place the deleted characters in a buffer. Pressing **<Gold>** followed by the **<Delete>** key used previously restores the buffer content (undeletes deleted text) to the screen.

## Database Field Types

Of the twelve user-accessible fields on entry form 'Full', ten are **PHrase** fields, one is a **DAte** field (**day**) and one is **TEText** (**content**). Only valid dates, times and integers can be written to type **DAte**, **TIime** and **INteger** database fields. Invalid values can be

entered, but a record cannot be saved until the contents of these fields have been formatted correctly.

### Entry Into DAtE Fields

Dates may be entered in the format specified by your user profile, that defined for the installation as a whole or in the TRIP standard format (e.g. 19920714 for 14-July-1992, which is always accepted).

### Entry Into TIme Fields

**Time** values should be entered in 24-hour clock format and may be entered with or without seconds, with a colon or space between the hour, minute and second values, e.g. 13:25:15.

### Entry Into PHrase Fields

The number of subfield values a particular **PHrase** field will accept depends on the design of the database, and in any case are entered one per line. In **PHrase** fields, the <Return> key moves the cursor into the next subfield. If the entry box is only one line high, the value just entered seems to disappear; use the cursor keys to scroll up and down through the subfield entries.

To insert a blank line before the first subfield entry, use <Gold><Keypad 0>. To place an empty line between subfield entries, position the cursor anywhere on the entry you wish to insert a line after and press <Return>.

TRIP also allows the use of **Display** in entry form **PHrase** fields. With the cursor in the entry field you wish to **Display**, press

<Gold><D> to bring up an alphabetical listing of all entries made to date in that field. You can then choose one or more items to import into the entry field box using the cursor movement keys, <Select> and ↵ as with **Search Display**.

### Entry Into TExt Fields

In **TExt** fields, the default definition of a sentence is a line of text which terminates with one of three *sentence ending characters*, the full stop (.), exclamation point (!) or question mark (?), followed by at least one space and/or one new line. The next character must be in upper case. The paragraph default definition is the default sentence definition as outlined above, plus a minimum of two new lines. Other sentence and paragraph definitions may be included or substituted in the design of a database.

Word wrapping occurs automatically in text fields, so <Return> is not necessary at the end of a line, however a paragraph must be terminated by two <Return>s. The first ends the current line, and the second generates a blank line between the two paragraphs.

## Adding Records

New records can be created and added to the database directly via the blank entry form. All write-accessible fields accept data according to database field type and entry form field characteristics. On completion, you may either save the record or exit without saving.

Enter the following information on Screens 1 and 2 of the entry form 'Full', using the cursor/screen movement and editing keys and following the on-screen directions provided to navigate the fields.

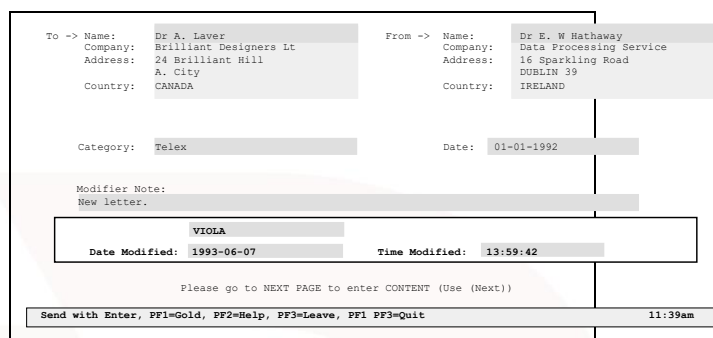


Figure 9–8 Data entry into database Corr, screen one of two

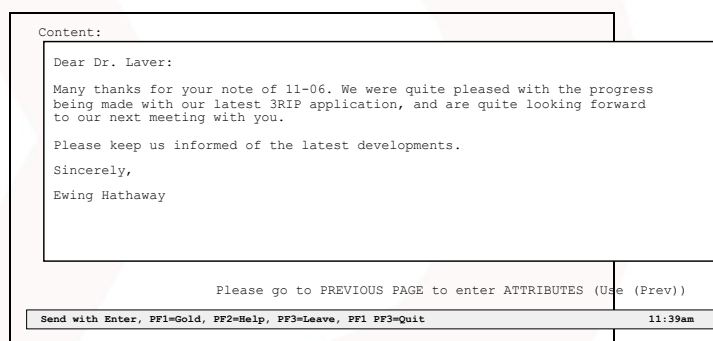


Figure 9–9 Data entry into database Corr, screen two of two

## Record Locking

If you want to exit the entry form at any time without saving the data contained within it, press <Leave>. TRIP responds with this message: "Quit? (Y=Yes [Retain Record Lock], N=No, PF3=Release Record Lock)".

*Record locking* occurs at the time of record creation, or whenever a record is retrieved for editorial changes. At this point, TRIP temporarily secures the record ('locks' it) against alteration by any other user while it is being created or edited. Another user attempting to write simultaneously to that record will receive the contention message "Record is locked by *TRIPusername* (*SYSTEMusername*).", where *TRIPusername* is the TRIP user ID and *SYSTEMusername* the system user designation of the creator/editor who is writing to the record.



Respond with:

'Y' and ↵ to exit (without saving) and maintain the record lock

'N' and ↵ to return to editing

<Leave> to exit (without saving) and free the record.

All locks are broken when the lockholder ends the TRIP session.

You will not receive a "Quit? ..." message if either the data entry area is empty or all changes to the current record have already been saved.

## Saving Records

When finished entering data you will need to **SAve** it; that is, write the current record (as shown in the data entry form) to the database. To do this, position the cursor anywhere on any of the entry screens, press <Enter> and WRITE DOWN THE RECORD NUMBER THAT APPEARS AT THE BOTTOM OF YOUR SCREEN. You will need this reference number for later exercises.

If you have made an entry error, TRIP will move the cursor to the offending field and provide both an audible signal and a written message as to the type of error incurred. If all information has been entered correctly you will see the confirmatory message "Record *n* added.", *n* being the *unique record identifier* (record name or number) of the new record in the database.

One important exception to the cursor positioning before a **SAve** discussed above occurs with entry into databases containing head and part records. If you edit the contents of any part record field or create a new part record, you must ensure that each part record is saved separately. When you have completed entry, position the cursor anywhere in the new or modified part record and press

<Enter>. Do this for *each* part record, then move to the head record and press <Enter> again with the cursor within any head field to save the whole record.

if you do not save an edited part record before saving the entire record, all new part data will be lost.

*Note:*

*If there are many new users working through these tutorials at your installation, enough records may eventually be added to the demonstration database **Corr** that the search results you produce will be different from those printed in this manual.*

To avoid this, your current copy of **Corr** will be replaced with the version originally shipped with the product (99 records) when you receive the next TRIP Maintenance Release. All records added to **Corr** since either the TRIP date of purchase or the installation of the last Maintenance Release will then be deleted.

## Exit from Data Entry

To exit from data entry and return to the Primary Option Menu press **<Leave>**.

## Modifying Records

To *modify* a record is to change, edit, delete information from, add data to or otherwise alter the contents of a record that has already been created. As with all data entry operations, **Modify** makes changes to only one record at a time. A form similar to 'Add Records' is used to access the entry forms for both modification and deletion.

To modify a record, you must first recall it into the entry form for editing. If the record you wish to modify is already loaded into the data entry form and visible on screen (for example, if you have completed initial entry, but have not yet saved the record), make the necessary changes and save the record as discussed previously.

If it is not, there are several methods available to recall it.

## Modifying A Record From The System Prompt

To proceed directly to the **Modify** portion of data entry, use this command at the system prompt:

```
trip -e modify -C 'bas databasename' ↵
```

This statement calls TRIP, takes you directly into data entry (option **e**) using the 'Modify' option (short form: **M**). It instructs TRIP to open the database of your choice using option **C**, the **BASe** command and the database name.

The default entry form will be opened, and TRIP prompts you for the record number of the record to be modified.

## Modifying A Record From CCL

### Editing An Entire Search Set

To modify the records of the last search result obtained, one record at a time, open the database containing the appropriate records and use the **EDit** (short form: **ED**) command. For example,

```
bas corr ↵  
S=1 <99> BAsE corr  
f rname=mats and sweden  
S=2 <5> Find rname=mats AND sweden↵  
ed s=0 ↵
```

These statements open database **Corr**, search for all records containing the name 'Mats' and the term 'Sweden', start the default data entry form and bring the records of the search result into the form in record number order (record number 1, record number 2, record number 3 etc.).

To move forward one record use <Gold><Next>, or use <Enter> if you have not made changes to the record. To move back one record use <Gold><Previous>. To quit data entry, press <Leave>.

### Edit Current Record

Using S=2 from the example above,

s ↵

first **Show** the results (you should see record numbers 15, 23, 40, 71 and 75). Scroll the output until the record you would like to edit becomes the current or active record (is the bottom-most record on the screen). Type:

ed ↵

on the Command line, or use <Gold><E> (for <Edit>). This will call the active record into the default entry form. To quit the entry form, press <Leave>.

### Search And Select

You can also modify records by selecting one or more from a search result currently in History. Using S=2 once more, press <Select> to place your cursor in the Show area and scroll to the record you wish to edit. Position the cursor anywhere in the record and press

<Select>, then ↵. The cursor returns to the Command line. Use:

ed ↵

or <Gold><E> to open the default data entry form. The record(s) you have chosen will appear in sequential order by record number.

The same movement and exit keys apply as were discussed in 'Editing An Entire Search Set'.

## Modifying A Record From The Primary Option Menu

Pull down the **Data Entry** sub-menu with ↵ or the <↓ Arrow> and select **Modify**, then press ↵. The 'Modify Records In Database' screen appears (see below).



Figure 9–10 The Modify Records box

Enter **Corr** beside the 'Database:' prompt and press ↵, then Full next to 'Form:' and press ↵.

A new or blank data entry screen appears.

Record Number: 102

To -> Name: [redacted]  
Company: [redacted]  
Address: [redacted]  
Country: [redacted]

From -> Name: [redacted]  
Company: [redacted]  
Address: [redacted]  
Country: [redacted]

Category: [redacted]

Date: [redacted]

Modifier Note:  
[redacted]

Date Modified: [redacted]

Time Modified: [redacted]

Please go to NEXT PAGE to enter CONTENT (Use (Next))

Enter record id and press Enter.11:39am

Figure 9–11 A modify record screen, screen one of two

You are prompted for the record number or unique record identifier, which is printed at the bottom of the data entry screen when a new or modified record is saved.

Type the number of the record you entered previously here and press ↵. The record will be displayed once more in the **Data Entry** windows.

To -> Name: Dr A. Laver  
Company: Brilliant Designers Lt  
Address: 24 Brilliant Hill  
Country: A. City  
CANADA

From -> Name: Dr E. W Hathaway  
Company: Data Processing Service  
Address: 16 Sparkling Road  
Country: DUBLIN 39  
IRELAND

Category: Telex

Date: 1992-01-01

Modifier Note:  
New letter.

VIOLA

Date Modified: 1993-06-08

Time Modified: 22:00:50

Please go to NEXT PAGE to enter CONTENT (Use (Next))

Send with Enter, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit11:39am

Figure 9–12 Record modification, screen one of two

Content:

Dear Dr. Laver:  
  
Many thanks for your note of 11-06. We were quite pleased with the progress being made with our latest 3RIP application, and are quite looking forward to our next meeting with you.  
  
Please keep us informed of the latest developments.  
  
Sincerely,  
Ewing Hathaway

Please go to PREVIOUS PAGE to enter ATTRIBUTES (Use (Prev))

Send with Enter, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit11:39am

Figure 9–13 Record modification, screen two of two

The ‘Modifier’ (Viola), ‘Date Modified:’ (1993-06-08) and ‘Time Modified:’ (22:00:50) fields have been prefilled with your user name and the current date and time. All fields to which you have write access may be modified, or deleted if they are not mandatory.

Use the editing keys to make the following changes to the record:

Entry Field	Current Contents	Change To:
To: Name	Dr A. Laver	David Stone
From: Address	16 Sparkling Road	21 Hills Road Dublin A.N.
Other City		
Content	Remove the first paragraph (from 'Many thanks...' to '...meeting with you.')	

and save the record. TRIP confirms with "Record *n* modified.", where *n* is the record identifier. The same operating rules apply here as in 'Add Record to Database', so if on completion you decide to abandon the record, you may choose to retain or release Record Lock.

## Deleting Records

**Delete** is used to remove a record from the database in its entirety, rather than erasing a portion of it. Unlike **Modify**, if a record has already been saved at least once it cannot be easily **Deleted** while it is displayed on an **Add** or **Modify** entry screen. A record can be erased in either of these two modes only by clearing the contents of each field individually with the editing keys and then saving, and cannot be removed entirely with **Add** or **Modify** if the database contains one or more mandatory fields.

### Deleting Records From The System Prompt

To remove records from a database from the system prompt, use this command:

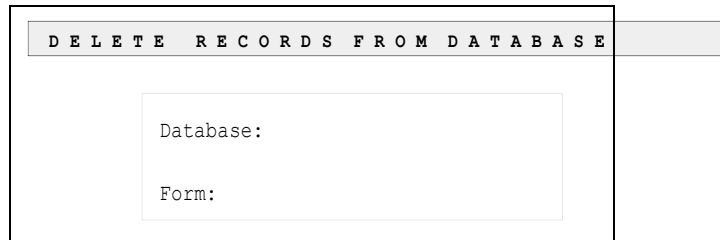
```
trip -e delete -C 'bas databasename' ↵
```

This statement calls TRIP, takes you directly into data entry (option **e**) using the 'Delete' option (short form: **D**). It instructs TRIP to open the database of your choice using option **C**, the **BASe** command and the database name.

The default entry form is opened, and you are prompted for the record number of the record you wish to delete.

### Deleting Records From the Primary Option Menu

Choose the **Data Entry** sub-menu of the Primary Option Menu with ↵ or the <↓  
**Arrow**> and select **Delete**, then press ↵. A replica of the 'Modify Records' appears as shown:



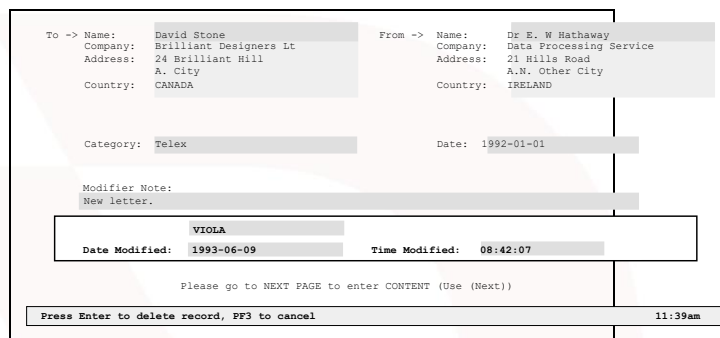
DELETE RECORDS FROM DATABASE

Database:

Form:

**Figure 9–14 The Delete Records box**

Enter the name of the database containing the record you wish to erase (**Corr**) and the entry form name ('Full') and press ↵. You are again prompted for the number of the record to be deleted. Enter the record identifier of the record you modified previously and press ↵. The record will be inserted into the entry form and you will be instructed to "Press Enter to delete record, PF3 to cancel" (see below):



To -> Name: David Stone  
Company: Brilliant Designers Lt  
Address: 24 Brilliant Hill  
A. City  
Country: CANADA

From -> Name: Dr. E. W. Hathaway  
Company: Data Processing Service  
Address: 21 Hills Road  
A.N. Other City  
Country: IRELAND

Category: Telex

Date: 1992-01-01

Modifier Note:  
New letter.

Date Modified: 1993-06-09

Time Modified: 08:42:07

VIOLA

Please go to NEXT PAGE to enter CONTENT (Use (Next))

Press Enter to delete record, PF3 to cancel

11:39am

**Figure 9–15 Record deletion, screen one**

The 'Modifier', 'Date Modified' and 'Time Modified' fields are auto-filled with the name of the last person to alter the record and the date and time of the last change. Press <Enter> to delete the record; you will receive the confirmation "Record *n* deleted." If you then attempt to modify that record, the warning "Non-existing record: *n*" will appear. When finished, press <Leave> to return to the Primary Option Menu.

## Data Entry With Record Parts

In order to be able to use the navigation commands shown here, your database manager must have updated the design of your database to Version 3.0. This means that a *Record Part Name field* (RPN) must have been assigned for the database. These features are only available when the cursor is placed in a part field. The changes you make will not be saved until you save the whole record by pressing <Enter> with the cursor in a head field.

### Selecting a Record Part

#### Using <Gold><S>

Place the cursor anywhere in the part record and press <Gold><S>. You will be prompted for an RPN.

#### Using <Gold><D>

Press **<Gold><D>** to obtain a list of all available RPNs for this record. Move to the RPN you wish to choose and press **<Select>**.

A search for this part will be made within the current record. If it is found, it will be shown in the current form; otherwise an error message will be shown.

## Inserting a Record Part

### Using **<Gold><I>**

Browse to or select the part before which you want to insert a new part, then press **<Gold><I>**. When the part fields of the current form are cleared and the cursor is placed in the RPN box, enter the RPN and press ENTER. If the RPN is accepted, enter the remainder of the part fields and press **<Enter>** to save; otherwise try another RPN, or press **<Leave>** to quit.

## Renaming a Record Part

### Using **<Gold><C>**

Browse to or select the part you want to rename, then press **<Gold><C>**. The cursor will be placed in the RPN box. Change the RPN and then press **<Enter>**. If the RPN is not accepted, the cursor will remain in the RPN box. In that event, try another name or press **<Leave>** to quit.

## Deleting a Record Part

### Using **<Gold><X>**

Browse to or select the part you want to delete, then press **<Gold><X>**. The current part will be cleared from the form and the next (or last) part will be displayed. The most recently deleted part within the current record can be retrieved using the undelete command.

## Undeleting the Last Deleted Record Part

### Using **<Gold><Y>** (Moving and Copying Record Parts)

Browse to or select the part before which you want the last deleted record part to be placed when undeleted, then press **<Gold><Y>**; a copy of the deleted part will be inserted at that point. The cursor will be placed in the RPN box, and you can then change the RPN or keep the same name. If you repeatedly undelete the same part to get several copies, you will need to change the RPN of all copies except the first. If the RPN is not accepted, the cursor remains in the RPN box, at which point you can try another name or press **<Leave>** to quit.

## Part 4:

# User Administration and Procedures



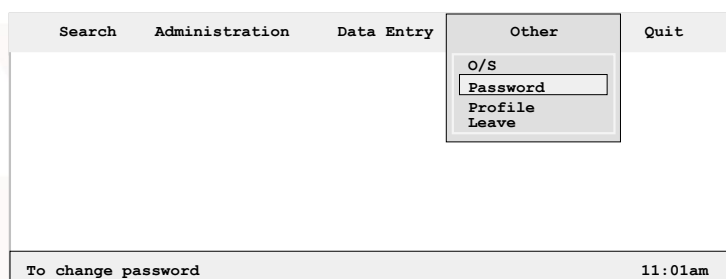


## Chapter 10: User Administration

This chapter covers two elements of the user environment which are under user control, the **password** and **profile**.

### Changing Your Password

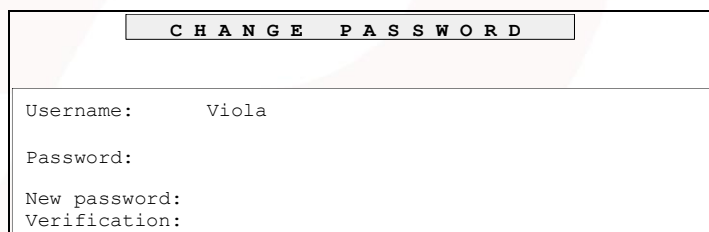
If you haven't logged on to TRIP as yet, do so now. Cursor over to the option marked **Other** on the Primary Option Menu and press the <↓ Arrow>, <Return> or <Enter> key. Position your cursor beside **Password** and press <Return> or <Enter> once more.



The screenshot shows a menu interface with five tabs: Search, Administration, Data Entry, Other, and Quit. The 'Other' tab is selected, and a sub-menu is displayed with four options: o/s, Password, Profile, and Leave. The 'Password' option is highlighted. At the bottom of the screen, a status bar shows 'To change password' on the left and '11:01am' on the right.

**Figure 10–1 The Change Password suboption box**

The **Change Password** window appears with your User Identification preprinted in the field marked 'Username' and the cursor positioned to the right of 'Password'.



The screenshot shows a window titled 'CHANGE PASSWORD'. Inside the window, there are four fields: 'Username:' with the value 'Viola', 'Password:', 'New password:', and 'Verification:'. The cursor is positioned to the right of the 'Password:' label.

**Figure 10–2 The Change Password window**

To select a new password, you must first provide authorization for the change by entering the one you are currently using in the 'Password' field. The characters you type in this box are not *echoed to* (printed on) the screen, preventing unauthorized persons from altering it and locking you out of your account.

If you would like a new password, type the one you are using beside 'Password' and press <Tab>, <↓ Arrow> or ↵. The cursor will move to 'New Password', where you will enter the new password you have chosen (it can be from one to thirty-two characters long, with no spaces). After pressing <Tab>, <↓ Arrow> or ↵ again, retype the new password in the verification field (to ensure against typographical errors) and press ↵. TRIP confirms with "Password is changed", and the cursor is positioned beside 'New Password'.

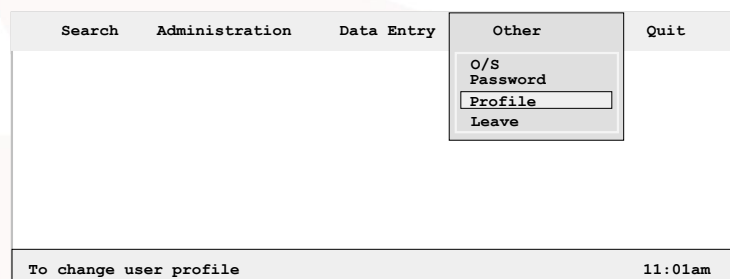
To return to the Primary Option Menu, press <Leave>. The next time you log on to TRIP, you must use your new password.

You can also set up your User Profile so that you do not need a password, if your TRIP username is the same as your Host Username. See the section below on the 'User Profile' if you wish to use this facility.

## User Profile

The User Profile window allows you to change some of the ways in which TRIP responds to your actions.

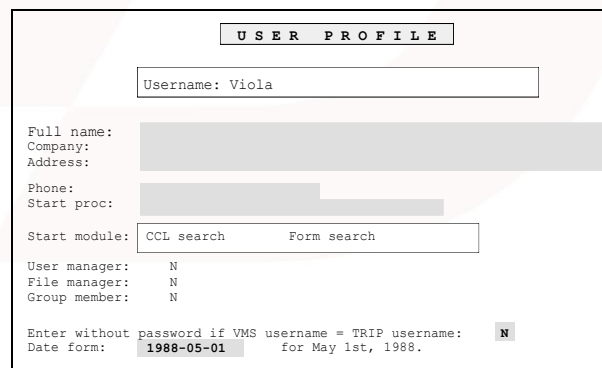
To read your User Profile, your cursor should be somewhere on the Primary Option Menu. Move your cursor to the immediate left of **Other** and press ↓ or <↓ Arrow>. Use <↓ Arrow> to highlight the **Profile** suboption and press ↓.



Search	Administration	Data Entry	Other	Quit
			O/S Password <b>Profile</b> Leave	
To change user profile				11:01am

Figure 10–3 The Change Profile suboption box

The **User Profile** screen will appear:



USER PROFILE

Username: Viola

Full name:  
 Company:  
 Address:  
 Phone:  
 Start proc:

Start module: CCL search    Form search

User manager: N  
 File manager: N  
 Group member: N

Enter without password if VMS username = TRIP username: N  
 Date form: 1988-05-01 for May 1st, 1988.

Figure 10–4 The User Profile window

The User Profile attributes are divided into sections:

- User Details
- Start Procedure and Module
- Manager and Group Details
- Username
- Date Form

Each of these is now covered in turn.

The attributes which you can change are highlighted on the screen. Use <Tab>, <Return> or the <↑ or ↓ Arrow> keys to move around the form. You may press <Leave> to exit without saving changes at any time.

## User Details

The first four lines allow you to enter your name, your employer's name and address and your telephone number if desired.

## Start Procedure and Module

### Start Procedure

If the name of a procedure is entered in the **Start Procedure** field, that procedure will be executed when you start a TRIP session and enter CCL Search mode for the first time. This can be any type of procedure to which you have access, whether private, group or public.

For example, if you would like to run the same search (such as an SDI search) or define a particular entry form to be the default every time you begin a TRIP session, you can specify that here.

### Start Module

The **Start Module** options are 'CCL Search', 'Form Search' or none (no highlighting). To start every TRIP session at the command line of the CCL Search window, choose the 'CCL Search' option by placing your cursor in the **Start Module** box and pressing <Select> (should you change your mind, use <Gold><Select> to clear). If you select the 'Form Search' option, TRIP begins the session by asking for a search form. If you do not select either of these two, your session opens with a display of the Primary Option Menu.

## Manager and Group Details

These fields tell you what 'manager rights' you have in TRIP. The ability to create new databases, users, groups of users etc. is assigned by the system manager and cannot be changed by the user.

A 'Yes' in the 'User Manager' box indicates that you are able to create new users and user groups. 'Y' beside 'File Manager' allows you to create, modify and grant user and user group access to your own databases. 'Yes' for 'Group Member' means you are a member of one or more user groups in TRIP.

## Username

If your TRIP username is the *same as* your Host or system username, *and* this field is selected, you will not need to enter your password when you log on to TRIP with that username. To select this field, move the cursor to the 'N' and overwrite it with a 'Y'.

## Date Form

This group of fields allows you to change your date form, both the format in which the date is entered into fields on search and entry forms, and that in which it is displayed on output (unless the form is fixed by the output format itself). Both format and separators (characters which divide the month, day and year) may be changed.

To change the date form, position the cursor to the immediate left of 'for May 1st, 1988'.

```

Enter without password if VMS username = TRIP username: 1
Date form:      1988-05-01      for May 1st, 1988.
  
```

Figure 10-5 Changing the Date Format

and press <Keypad 9> for a list of the available formats:

```

USER PROFILE
1988-05-01
1988-5-1
88-5-1
1988-May-1
88-May-1
05-01-1988
5-1-1988
Phone: 5-1-88
Start May-1-1988
May-1-88
01-05-1988
1-5-1988
User m 1-5-88
File m 1-May-1988
Group 1-May-88
19880501
Enter 880501
Date f
  
```

Figure 10-6 The Date Form box

Move up and down the list with the <Arrow> keys and choose whatever form you like with <Select> (the default format is the first on the list, 1988-05-01). You will be returned to the User Profile window.

To change the digit separator characters, use <Tab> or the <↑ Arrow> or <↓ Arrow> keys to move to the first separator.

```

Enter without password if VMS username = TRIP username: 1
Date form:      1988-05-01      for May 1st, 1988.
  
```

Figure 10-7 Changing the first separator

and overwrite that character with a hyphen [-], slash [/], full stop [.] or full colon [:].

Repeat with the second separator:

```

Enter without password if VMS username = TRIP username: 1
Date form:      1988-05-01      for May 1st, 1988.
  
```

Figure 10-8 Changing the second separator

In addition to the date form in your profile, TRIP always recognizes the eight-character form **CCYYMMDD** (no separators between century, year, month and day), which gives **19880523** for **May 23, 1988**.

When you have finished customizing your profile, press **<Enter>** to exit and save your changes. The message “User profile modified. Press <RET>” will appear at the bottom of your screen. Press ↵ to restore the Primary Option Menu.

If you wish to exit without saving changes, press **<Leave>**.





## Chapter 11: User Procedures

Procedures are used to automate TRIP orders, and are collections of statements which are executed one after the other when the procedure is called. A procedure is run either by using the **Run** order and the procedure name, or by using the procedure name alone (as long as the name does not conflict with any CCL command).

External host command procedures can also be executed from the CCL command line. However, this section refers exclusively to TRIP procedures which contain TRIP orders and commands.

### Classes of Procedures

There are three classes of procedures: private, group and public.

A *private* procedure can be used only by its owner (creator). To make it available to another user, the owner must **EXPORT** the procedure to a file and the recipient must **IMPORT** that file as their own private procedure. If you must use **IMPORT/EXPORT**, see your User Manager for assistance.

*Group* procedures are created by the User Manager for the exclusive use of those group members. The procedure names are created from the group name, followed by a period and the name of the procedure. For example:

**sales.summary**

would be an appropriate name for a procedure called **Summary**, and is assigned to the user group 'Sales'.

All TRIP users have access to *public* procedures, which can only be created by the user SYSTEM. These are named using the word 'Public', followed by a period and the name of the procedure itself, as in:

**public.macrohelp**

### Conflicting Names

To explain how procedural name conflicts are resolved, assume that one particular user belongs to two groups, 'Divisional' and 'Sales', and wants to run a procedure called 'New\_Procedure'. He or she requests that 'New\_Procedure' be executed by using the **Run** (short form: **R**) command:

**r new\_procedure ↵**

TRIP searches for 'New\_Procedure' among this user's private procedures, and if found, the instructions are carried out. If it is not found, the system looks for procedures named 'Divisional.New\_Procedure' or 'Sales.New\_Procedure', those belonging to one of the user's groups. If any such procedure is found, it is run as

above. If there is more than one applicable procedure name, TRIP displays an error message asking for the procedure name in full.

If TRIP cannot find 'New\_Procedure' among the user's private or group procedures, it looks for it among the public procedures, and if it finds 'Public.New\_Procedure', runs it.

## Displaying Available Procedures

TRIP is shipped with a variety of public procedures, which are available to all users. To generate a list of these and any others to which you may have access, log on to TRIP and choose **CCL Search**. On the command line, enter the **Show PProcedure** (short form: **S PR**) request

**s pr ↵**

A screen similar to this one will appear:

(s pr)	
A_SAMPLE_PROC	VIOLA
ALICE_DEMO	PUBLIC
ALICE_DEMO2	PUBLIC
ALICE_SF2_SEL	PUBLIC
MACROARGUMENT	PUBLIC
MACROCCL	PUBLIC
MACROCLEAR	PUBLIC
MACROCOMMENT	PUBLIC
MACROEXIT	PUBLIC
MACROFUNCTIONS	PUBLIC
MACROGOTO	PUBLIC
MACROHEADER	PUBLIC
MACROHELP	PUBLIC
MACROIF	PUBLIC
MACROREAD	PUBLIC
MACROSTATEMENTS	PUBLIC
MACROSTATEMENTSE	PUBLIC
MACROSTRUCTURE	PUBLIC
MACROTRACK	PUBLIC
MACROWRITE	PUBLIC

(Enter your command, please.)	(Database)
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Send with Return, PF1=Gold, PF2=Help, PF3=Leave, PF1 PF3=Quit	11:39am
---	---------

**Figure 11-1 The Show Procedure screen**

which lists the name of the procedure first, then its class (public, group or private). If you are the creator (owner) of any of these, the class will be 'private' and your username will be displayed in the 'Class' column.

In the sample screen given previously, the procedure called 'A\_Sample\_Proc' is a private procedure which is owned by user 'Viola'. The remainder are public procedures available to all.

To have this list sent to a printer, use the order **Print PProcedure** (short form: **P PR**):

**p pr ↵**

## Creating and Modifying Procedures

Procedures are written using an ordinary Edit window. You will need a basic understanding of the system editor and editing commands in use at your installation for these exercises. Consult your system user guide or System Manager for assistance.



## Rules for Writing Simple Procedures

Keep the following in mind when writing procedures:

Each line may contain one order.

A procedure may call another procedure, down to a depth of five levels (procedural *nesting*).

Search result numbers used in a procedure are local to that procedure.

We will discuss each of these in later sections.

## Accessing Procedures

To create or modify a procedure, log on to TRIP, or if you are in **CCL Search**, escape by pressing <Leave> (possibly twice). Cursor over to **Administration** on the Primary Option Menu and press

<↓ Arrow> to display the suboption list. Move the cursor to **Forms/Procs** (Forms and Procedures) and press ↵.

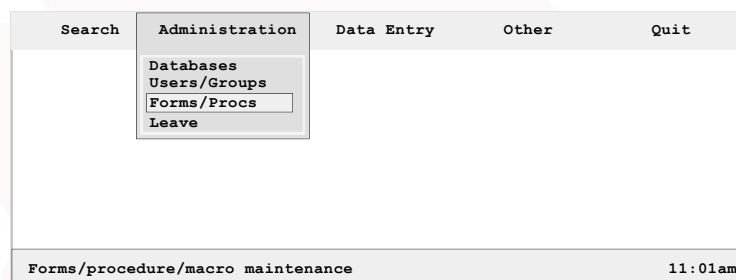


Figure 11–2 The Forms and Procedures suboption box

The Forms and Procedures Maintenance menu bar appears, containing the maintenance options for Entry Forms, Output Formats and Search Forms as well as Procedures. Move the cursor to **Procedure** and display the suboption box with <↓ Arrow>.

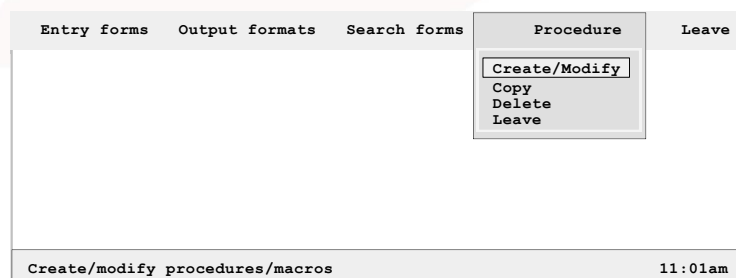


Figure 11–3 The Procedure suboption box

The cursor appears beside **Create/Modify**. Press ↵ to activate this option.

You are prompted for the name of the procedure you want to create or modify, and an optional description of its function:

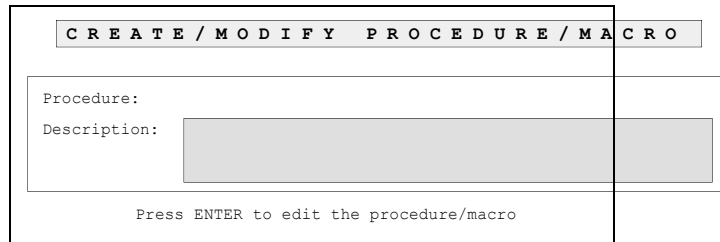


Figure 11–4 The Create/Modify Procedure/Macro screen

## Creating Procedures

Procedure names may contain from one to sixteen alphanumeric characters, and may include the underscore ( \_ ).

We will create a simple procedure called ‘Culinary’, which searches for certain foodstuffs mentioned in the demonstration databases. Type Culinary in the ‘Procedure:’ box and press <Enter> twice to enter the system editor directly, or cursor down to the ‘Description’ area, enter a short description (text wrapping is available) and press <Enter>. Compare what you have done with the example below:

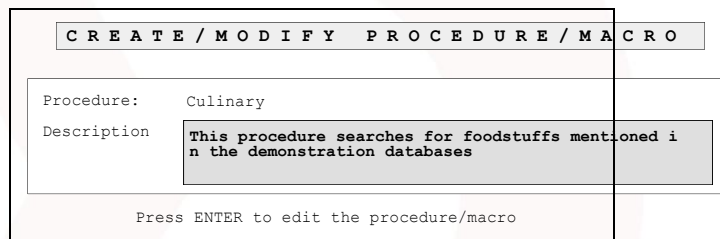


Figure 11–5 Creating the procedure ‘Culinary’

Once inside the Edit window, all of the edit functions native to your system installation are available. Type in the following line of code:

```
f (cook or food or mutton or pudding)
```

One search order per line (defined by using <Return>) is allowed, which may be up to 400 characters in length.

Note: This length limit is for *expanded* orders, those which TRIP has already converted into their final form, as in when ‘f’ becomes expanded to **Find**.

Since a screen can contain only eighty characters vertically, to accommodate long orders a *continuation character*, the hyphen (-), is used at the end of a line. This indicates to TRIP that the order continues on the next line, and must not be interpreted as a new order.

When you are finished, use your system’s equivalent of ‘Save and End’ to save the series of orders in the Edit area to the procedure file ‘Culinary’ and exit the editor. TRIP gives the message “Procedure *procedureclass*.CULINARY created. Press <RET>”, *procedureclass* being private, group or public, depending on your TRIP user status. If the author’s name is Viola, for example, TRIP acknowledges the creation of a new private procedure with the message “Procedure VIOLA.CULINARY created.

Press <RET>". Following the screen instructions, press <Return> now. The Forms and Procedures Menu will reappear, with the cursor resting beside **Procedure**.

To test the new procedure, press <Leave>, or cursor-right to option **Leave** and press ↵ or <↓ Arrow>. Activate **CCL Search** under **Search** and open database **Alice**, which produces this statement in the History window:

```
S=1      <475>      BAsE alice
```

Execute the procedure from the command line using **Run**:

```
r culinary ↵
```

or activate the procedure using only its name:

```
culinary ↵
```

Each command is executed in the order in which it was typed in the procedure, with each statement first displayed briefly in the command window,

```
Find (cook OR food OR mutton OR pudding)
```

then logged in the History window as usual:

```
S=2      <17>      Find (cook OR food OR mutton OR  
                  pudding)
```

Execution stops if one of the orders in the procedure leads to an error.

TRIP automatically adjusts the numbering of search results in History when you run a procedure. Run **Culinary** again—the search numbering is automatically incremented by one:

```
S=3      <17>      Find (cook OR food OR mutton OR  
                  pudding)
```

## Modifying Procedures

To return to the Primary Option Menu from CCL press <Leave>, then choose **Administration** and **Forms/Procs** as you did when creating a procedure. From the Forms and Procedures Maintenance Menu select **Procedure**, then activate **Create/Modify** as before. The name of the procedure you last created or modified *during the current TRIP session* will be displayed in the 'Procedure:' field of the **Create/Modify Procedure/Macro** screen, which should be the procedure 'Culinary'. If so, press <Enter> twice; if it is not, type in Culinary now and press <Enter> to modify it.

Until now, this procedure has contained only one instruction:

```
f (cook or food or mutton or pudding)
```

Edit this to read:

```
f (cook or food or mutton or pudding or meat or  
  soup or fish or wine)
```

then save and end.

TRIP prints the message “Procedure *procedureclass*.CULINARY altered. Press <RET>”. Were this once again a private procedure owned and created by user Viola, the message would read “Procedure VIOLA.CULINARY altered. Press <RET>”.

Press <Return>, and on the command line of CCL delete all previous orders with

```
del s=all ↵
```

Although you have deleted the *search statement* that opened database **Alice**, the database remains open, and you may omit the **BASE** command while testing the revised procedure. Activate the edited version using **run culinary** (or just **culinary**) as before. History contains:

```
S=1      <30>      Find (cook OR food OR mutton OR  
                    pudding OR meat OR soup OR  
                    fish OR wine)
```

with Procedure ‘Culinary’ examining **Alice** for each of the foodstuffs named above.

## Nesting Procedures

Procedural *nesting* involves importing the instructions stored in one procedure into another procedure by using its name in a CCL statement. Nesting can occur to a depth of five levels (that is, one procedure calling another, and that procedure in turn calling yet another) similar to that given below:

### **Procedure One:**

CCL statement  
CCL statement

### **Procedure Two**

CCL statement

### **Procedure Three**

### **Procedure Four**

CCL statement

### **Procedure Five**

CCL statement

CCL statement

CCL statement

CCL statement

CCL statement

CCL statement.

To create a nested procedure, press <Leave> to return to the Primary Option Menu and follow the 'Create Procedure' pathway once again, this time to write a procedure called 'Food\_Search':

*Primary Option Menu:*

Administration ↵

Forms/Procs ↵

Procedure ↵

Create/Modify ↵

'Procedure:' **Food\_Search** ↵↵

Type in these CCL orders, then save and end:

```
bas all_bases=alice,corr,thesali  
r culinary  
s fo
```

This procedure opens a multifile containing the three databases specified, calls procedure 'Culinary' and searches the multifile for the terms it prescribes, then **Shows** the search result using **FOcus**. You will receive the message "Procedure *procedureclass*. FOOD\_SEARCH created...".

Test the procedure in CCL in the usual way:

*Forms/Procedures Maintenance Menu:*

<Leave> ↵

Search ↵

CCL Search ↵

**Run food\_search** ↵

As the procedure specifies, a Show window is opened and record one of thirty-seven is displayed. After browsing the output use <Gold><H> to restore the History window, which should have these statements appended to it:

```
S=2      <714>      BAsE all_bases=alice, corr,  
thesali
```

```
S=3      <37>      Find (cook OR food OR mutton OR
                    pudding OR meat OR soup OR
                    fish OR wine)
```

## Copying Procedures

It is often easier to copy from one procedure to another and edit as necessary than to build a new procedure from the beginning. To do this, follow the Create/Modify pathway to bring up the **Copy Procedure/Macro** screen:

*Primary Option Menu:*

Administration ↵

Forms/Procs ↵

Procedure ↵

Copy ↵

As with **Modify**, the name of the last procedure created or modified during the current TRIP session comes up in the 'From procedure:' field:

C O P Y P R O C E D U R E / M A C R O	
From procedure:	food_search
To procedure:	

**Figure 11–6 The Copy Procedure/Macro screen**

Use <↓ Arrow> to place the cursor in the 'To procedure:' box and type the name of your new or target procedure (in this case New\_Procedure), then press ↵.

*Note:*

*If you do not wish to use the procedure provided in the box as your source procedure, replace it with the name of another procedure to which you have access and proceed as above.*

The contents of the existing procedure 'Food\_Search' are copied to the new one, 'New\_Procedure', and the confirming message "Procedure/macro copied." appears.

You are returned to the **Copy Procedure/Macro** window. To edit the new procedure press <Leave>, and choose **Procedure** and **Create/Modify** as before.

Since 'New\_Procedure' is the new default procedure name, press ↵ twice to edit it and change the instructions to these:

```
bas all_bases=alice,corr,thesali
de hi=all
```

```
f ancient
f s=0 and (history or mystery)
p no hold f=txt,txt2,content
```

then save and end as before.

'New\_Procedure' will now:

- open the multfile **All\_Bases**
- **DEfine** all hit terms as highlighted
- search All\_Bases for the term 'ancient'
- look in this subset of records (S=0) for the terms 'history' or 'mystery'
- print immediately (NO HOLD) the contents of the txt, txt2 and **content** fields for those records

When you run this procedure, these statements should be added to History:

```
S=4      <714>      BAsE all_bases=alice, corr,
thesali
S=5      <5>         Find ancient
S=6      <3>         Find S=5 AND (history OR
mystery)
```

and you should receive two confirmatory messages, "Highlighting of all hits" and "Print request no. 1 submitted to batch queue". You should receive an audible signal and a print completion message such as "Job PRINT (entry 658) completed" when printing has finished. To clear (Refresh) the screen and delete this message, press <CTRL><R>.

## Deleting Procedures

When procedures are no longer needed they can be deleted in one of two ways:

1. on the CCL command line, using a **DElete Procedure** (short form: **DEL PR**) order. Try this now with procedure 'Food\_Search':

```
del pr food_search ↵
```

TRIP verifies with 'Procedure FOOD\_SEARCH deleted.'

2. Using the **Delete** suboption of **Procedure**:

```
<Leave> (to escape CCL)
```

```
Primary Option Menu:
```

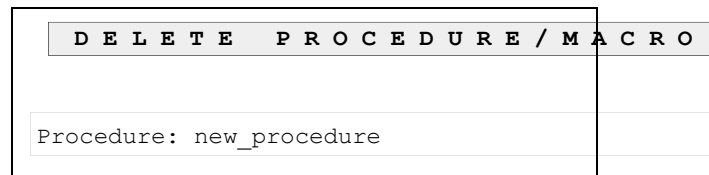
```
Administration ↵
```

```
Forms/Procs ↵
```

```
Procedure ↵
```

```
Delete ↵
```

The **Delete Procedure/Macro** screen appears:



**Figure 11–7 The Delete Procedure/Macro screen**

and as with the related suboptions of this group the name of the procedure which you last edited during this TRIP session will be written in the ‘Procedure:’ box.

If this is the procedure you wish to delete, press **<Enter>**; TRIP prompts you to ‘Press **< Enter >** to confirm:’. If you do not have ‘New\_Procedure’ in the ‘Procedure:’ box, type it in now and press **<Enter>** twice. TRIP responds, “Procedure NEW\_PROCEDURE deleted.”

Press **<Leave>** to return to the Primary Option Bar.

## Procedures from SAvE Orders

In Chapter Three we discussed storing collections of search results as private procedures using **SAve**, enabling us to copy, edit, delete and embed them as *procedures* in other procedures. To demonstrate, enter **CCL Search** and type in this series of search orders:

```
bas two_databases=alice,corr ↵
f persons ↵
f and mile_high ↵
```

Search History should contain:

S=7	<574>	BASE two_databases=alice, corr
S=8	<2>	Find persons
S=9	<1>	Find S=8 AND mile high

To store this series as a procedure, use the **SAve searchnumber procedurename** command

```
sa s=9 mile_high ↵
```

TRIP confirms with “Search 9 is saved as MILE\_HIGH”. You can now manipulate this file as you would any other procedure (see Chapter Three for more details).

*Note:*

*Remember that TRIP will not save any CCL statements in the new procedure that are not necessary to produce the final search result. Search results one through six in History will therefore not be included in ‘Procedure Mile\_High’.*



Also keep in mind that the search result numbers generated within a procedure are *local to that procedure*, and are automatically renumbered to follow whatever sequence is already present in the History window when the procedure is run.

For example, the CCL statements entered on the Command Line in the last example give search results numbered seven, eight and nine:

```
S=7      <574>    BAsE two_databases=alice, corr
S=8      <2>      Find persons
S=9      <1>      Find S=8 AND mile high
```

since the previous search registered was result number six. Search result number nine and the orders necessary to produce it were then saved as procedure 'Mile\_High'. The instructions now stored *within* 'Mile\_High', however, assume internal numbers of their own, and all search orders within that procedure which refer to earlier CCL statements (also internal to that procedure) use these local numbers.

What was previously search result seven in the History window shown above becomes result number one within Mile\_High, while result eight becomes two, and nine is renumbered to three:

```
BAsE two_databases=alice, corr
Find persons
Find S=2 AND mile high
```

If you run 'Mile\_High' again, the search result numbers in History change once more; however, the internal numbering of the procedure remains the same:

```
S=10     <574>    BAsE two_databases=alice, corr
S=11     <2>      Find persons
S=12     <1>      Find S=11 AND mile high
```

When writing and testing more complex procedures, it may help to include this **DElete** Search Result request as the first instruction:

```
del s=all ↵
```

This will clear the History window of all previous search results whenever the new procedure is run, and allow accurate tracking of search result numbering during creation and testing. This line can be removed when the procedure has been completed.

To **DElete** procedures created with **SAve**, use one of the methods mentioned previously in 'Deleting Procedures', or try the **DElete SAve** (short form: **DEL SA**) order:

```
del sa procedurename ↵
```

## Procedures with Arguments

Making use of TRIP's ability to pass parameters and variables to procedures increases their flexibility. Each piece of data passed is called an *argument*, with the arguments separated by commas, and each might include a date for a search order, a database name or an output format.

A procedure with arguments has two segments, a head and a body. The head contains one line for each parameter passed to the procedure by the user. Up to nine parameters are allowed (%1 through %9), and any mandatory arguments must come first in the procedure head. The other parameters must be given a default value to be used if that argument is omitted when the procedure is used. The procedure body consists of CCL orders, one order on each line.

Try creating a procedure with this set of **Alice** search commands and save it as 'View\_Person\_Text':

```
%1(?A search expression must follow
View_Person_Text)
%2=person
%3=person, text
bas alice
f %1
s sor=%2 f=%3
```

A **Run** order using this procedure in CCL would take the following form:

```
r view_person_text searchterm, fieldname,
formatname
```

At run-time this procedure does the following:

finds the procedure named 'View\_Person\_Text'

looks for a mandatory user-provided *search term* (followed by a comma) immediately after the procedure name and stores it in the first argument, %1.

It is possible to include customized error message text as part of this statement by typing parentheses, a '?' and the desired text (in this example it is "A search expression must follow VIEW\_PERSON\_TEXT") which will be displayed if a user tries to run this procedure without the mandatory argument. If no error text is provided, the default error message is "Missing mandatory argument."

looks for a user-supplied *field name* (followed by a comma) in which to search for the term stored in %1 and places in the second argument, %2. If the user does not provide a field name, the procedure will use the **person** field by default

looks for a user-furnished *format name* with which to display the search result and keeps it in the third argument, %3. If none is given, the procedure will use its predefined default, **format=person, text**

opens the demonstration database **Alice**

**Finds** the search term stored in %1

and **Shows** the search result **SORT**ed according to the contents of **%2**, and in the **Format** specified by **%3**.

Here are some sample **Run** orders using procedure 'View\_Person\_Text' with their respective Search Histories:

*Example 1:*

```
r view_person_text cat,chaptnr,2
S=1      <475>      BAsE Alice
S=2      <22>       Find cat
```

shows the output sorted by **chaptnr** and in Format 2.

*Example 2:*

```
r view_person_text person=rabbit
S=3      <475>      BAsE alice
S=4      <34>       Find person=rabbit
```

has the output sorted by **person** and using Format=person, text.

This procedure can be called without the second and/or third argument, in which case the default values given in the procedure are used. If the procedure is called without the first argument (which is mandatory and for which no default value is given), it results in the error message defined for this parameter in the procedure head being given.

*Note:*

*The text after the query sign (?) in the message "(?A search expression...)" must not exceed sixty-eight characters.*

*Example 3:*

```
r view_person_text white or
red,"chaptnr,speaker",1
S=5      <475>      BAsE Alice
S=6      <171>      Find white OR red
```

and the output is sorted by **chaptnr** and **speaker**, and shown in Format=1.

As evidenced by the preceding examples, the arguments of a **Run** order are separated by commas. The double quotation marks are necessary, since here the second comma is part of the second argument. Single quotation marks cannot be substituted, as they would be read by TRIP as part of the second argument and would lead to an error message.

## Text Substitution Procedures

A special kind of procedure, the *microprocedure*, consists of only a single line of text.

As an example, create a procedure now called 'Alices\_Animals', containing this text:

```
(lion or tiger or bear)
```

This procedure may be used in search requests such as:

```
f %alices_animals and soldier# ↵
```

which produces this result:

```
S=7      <2>      Find (lion OR tiger OR bear) AND  
                        soldier#
```

Here you can see that the text of the procedure is inserted instead of the % sign and procedure name.

Create another procedure called 'Text\_Only', containing this one-line instruction:

```
f=txt,txt2,content sor=person, speaker, rname,  
sname
```

This type of procedure can be especially helpful in a search series such as this:

```
bas both=alice,corr ↵  
f person ↵  
s %text_only ↵
```

where a long string of text is automatically substituted for % and a procedure name which can be as short as a single character.

It is also possible to store lists of search terms (one per line) in external files, and incorporate the file names into CCL statements. If the animal terms contained in microprocedure 'Alices\_Animals' were saved in an external file called 'More\_Animals' in this way:

```
lion  
tiger  
bear
```

and the file name was substituted for the procedure name in the example above, the syntax would be:

```
f file(more_animals.txt) and soldier#
```

with similar results.

# Part 5:

## Macros





## Chapter 12: Macros

### Macro Facilities Within TRIP

The macro facilities in TRIP allow users to create their own commands, and make certain extensions to the functionality of the standard TRIP procedures possible.

Creating, modifying, and deleting a macro is done exactly as if it was an ordinary procedure. A macro is invoked for execution by giving a command to TRIP in one of the formats listed below:

```
macroname argument1, argument2...argumentn  
%macroname argument1, argument2...argumentn  
Run macroname argument1, argument2...argumentn
```

### Macro Structure

TRIP macros consist of the following parts:

#### Macro Header

This part consists of the single reserved word MACRO on the first line of the procedure. It is the macro header that makes TRIP recognize the procedure as a macro procedure and therefore treat it differently than an ordinary procedure.

#### Argument Specification

This part consists of one or more argument specification statements directly following the macro header, and is equivalent to the procedure head in an ordinary procedure. They must be on separate lines, and can take the following forms:

```
%arg_number  
%arg_number=default  
%arg_number(?Error_message_text)
```

where:

- Arg\_number is a single-digit number from 1 to 9 inclusive,
- default is a value that is to be used as a default (where an optional argument is not specified in the command line that invokes the macro), and
- error\_message\_text is the text of an error message which is to be displayed on the screen when a required argument is missing from the command line that invokes the macro.

### Macro Arguments, Variables and Functions

There are three constructs available which will be assigned values at the time of execution:

## Macro Arguments

There are nine arguments available of the form:

**%n**

where n is 1, 2, ... 9

In the case of nested macros, the values of all arguments must be given explicitly when the top level macro is invoked. If any of them are used in lower level macros, they must be passed on to the lower level macros by the invoking macro.

## Macro Variables

There are twenty-six macro variables, which may be given values through the macro read statements and used in various other macro statements. The form of a macro variable is:

**%\***

where \* is a letter from the English alphabet, for example

**%A**

Macro variables are local to the macro in which they are being used. In the case of nested macros, the values given to the variables in a higher level macro will not change through the execution of a lower level macro.

## Macro Functions

The following macro functions are currently available:

Macro Function	Produces
%USER	the current TRIP user
%TIME	the current time
%DATE	the current date
%BASE	the currently-open database
%SEAR	the current search number
%NREC	the number of records in the current search
%NHIT	the number of terms found in the current search
%LANG	the current language
%SUCC	contains 'Y' if the most recent CCL order succeeded, and 'N' otherwise
%RTNB	contains TRIP's return code from the preceding CCL order (an odd value implies success)



%RTNA	contains the return value of the most recently called ASE
-------	---

**Table 12- 1       Macro functions**



## Macro Statements

This part consists of one or more macro statements, including CCL, WRITE, READ, LET, CLEAR, IF (conditional), GOTO, COMMENT, TRACK, WAIT or EXIT.

### CCL

A CCL statement can be the invocation of a macro or any of the commands currently recognized by TRIP, and will be scanned for references to any of the macro arguments, macro variables, or macro functions. These references will be resolved, and the relevant values substituted in the CCL command.

There is currently a limit of 400 characters on the length of any CCL command, and any CCL command which exceeds this limit after expansion will be rejected as an error.

### WRITE

This statement will allow the user to write a text string into the macro window, beginning at a particular row and column. The macro window is nineteen rows deep and seventy-eight columns wide. The text string to be written to the window will be scanned for references to macro arguments, variables, and functions, and these will be resolved when the string is written. The format of the statement is:

**WRITE(row, column, 'text\_string')**

Any row or column value outside the permitted range will be reflected as an error. A text string which extends beyond the maximum column number will cause the macro to terminate with an error message.

*Note:*

*By default the contents of the macro window are presented in 'Bold'. To cancel this, enter the statement:*

**WRITE(normal)**

*before the first WRITE statement of the macro.*

### READ

This statement will allow TRIP to read a text string from the keyboard into a macro variable. The format of the statement is:

**READ(row, column, 'prompt\_text',  
macro\_variable)**

where:

- *Row* and *column* are the row and column respectively where the *prompt\_text* will start,
- *prompt\_text* is the text to be used as a prompt for the read operation, and
- *macro\_variable* is the variable to which the input string is to be assigned.

## LET

This statement is an alternative way of putting a text string into a macro variable.  
The format of the statement is:

```
LET macro_variable=text_string
```

A macro function may be inserted in the variable in the same fashion.

## CLEAR

This allows the macro window or a number of lines in it to be cleared within a MACRO. The format of the statement is:

```
CLEAR(first_row, last_row)
```

where:

*first\_row* is the first row to be cleared, and

*last\_row* is the last row to be cleared.

## IF

This statement will allow the user to test on various conditions and control the execution of statements within the macro. Each statement must start on a new line, and IF statements can be nested.

The formats of the IF ...statement are:

```
IF condition THEN  
    statement (s)  
ENDIF
```

or

```
IF condition THEN  
    statement1 (s)  
ELSE  
    statement2 (s)  
ENDIF
```

The format of conditions is '*expression operator expression*', and the formats of expression are '*macro argument/macro variable/ macro function/list of constants*', where a constant is a string of characters, and each element of the list is separated by a comma.

The formats of operator are:

Operator	Function
EQ	equal to
GT	greater than
LT	less than
GE	greater than or equal to
LE	less than or equal to
NE	not equal to
IN	contained in

**Table 12- 2 IF Statement Conditional Operators**

The IN operator can only be used when the expression following it consists of a list of more than one constant, for example

```
IF %A IN y,n THEN
...
ENDIF
```

The formation of statement(s), statement1(s), and statement2(s) is any macro statement.

## GOTO

This statement will allow the user to specify a line in the macro to which flow of control will then go. The format of the GOTO statement is:

```
GOTO label
```

where *label* is a character string

Somewhere in the macro there must be a line similar to this:

```
- label
```

and execution will resume with the line following this one.

## COMMENT

Any line beginning with a single asterisk [\*] or exclamation point [!] in a macro will be treated as a comment line, and no further interpretation of it will be given when the macro is executed.

This is an example of a two-line comment:

```
* This is a comment line, followed immediately *
by another such comment line!
```

## TRACK

This displays the macro commands in the TRIP command window as they are being executed, enabling the user to follow the flow of control as the macro is running.

The format of the TRACK statement is:

**TRACK *n***

where *n* is the number of seconds that the command is to be displayed before it is actually executed.

**WAIT**

This suspends execution of the macro for the specified number of seconds. The format of the statement is:

**WAIT *n***

where *n* is the number of seconds the execution will be delayed before resuming at the next line.

**EXIT**

If you wish a macro to return to its point of activation before executing its last line, use the EXIT command. For example,

```
IF %A EQ 1 THEN  
ELSE  
ENDIF
```

## Macro Examples

When your TRIP system is delivered, an online help facility gives the following information in menu form. These menus and the texts they present are themselves contained in macros. Macro help is invoked by activating the macro MACROHELP from the CCL command line:

### **macrohelp**

The menu macros may serve as examples of how to create macros, and are reproduced here for reference.



## PUBLIC.MACROHELP

```
MACRO

*

- start

WRITE ( 4,10,' Introduction to the MACRO facilities within TRIP.
')

WRITE ( 6,10,' The MACRO facilities in TRIP allow for certain
extensions  ')

WRITE ( 7,10,' to the functionality of the standard TRIP
procedures.  ')

WRITE (12,10,' Choose one of the following options  :--  ')

WRITE (14,10,' 1 The Structure of a macro  ')

WRITE (15,10,' 2 MACRO Statements  ')

WRITE (16,10,' 3 MACRO Functions  ')

WRITE (17,10,' 4 Quit this Introduction  ')

READ (19,30,'CHOICE  : ',%A)

*

IF %A EQ 1 THEN

    %PUBLIC.MacroStructure

ELSE

    IF %A EQ 2 THEN

        %PUBLIC.MacroStatements

    ELSE

        IF %A EQ 3 THEN

            %PUBLIC.MacroFunctions

        ELSE

            IF %A EQ 4 THEN

                GOTO stop

            ENDIF

        ENDIF

    ENDIF

ENDIF

GOTO start

*

- stop

EXIT
```

## PUBLIC.MACROSTRUCTURE

```
MACRO

*

- start

WRITE ( 3, 2, 'The Structure of TRIP Macros.  ')

WRITE ( 5, 2, 'TRIP Macros consist of the following parts  :-- ')

WRITE ( 7, 2, ' 1 The MACRO header.  ')

WRITE ( 8, 2, ' 2 The Argument specification section.  ')

WRITE ( 9, 2, ' 3 The Macro statement section.  ')

WRITE (10, 2, ' 4 Quit.  ')

READ (19,30,'CHOICE  : ',%A)

*

IF %A EQ 1 THEN

    %PUBLIC.MacroHeader

ELSE

    IF %A EQ 2 THEN

        %PUBLIC.MacroArgument

    ELSE

        IF %A EQ 3 THEN

            %PUBLIC.MacroStatementSe

        ELSE

            IF %A EQ 4 THEN

                GOTO stop

            ENDIF

        ENDIF

    ENDIF

ENDIF

GOTO start

*

- stop*

*

EXIT
```



## PUBLIC.MACROHEADER

```
MACRO

*

WRITE ( 4,20,' THE MACRO HEADER')

WRITE ( 8,10,' This part consists of the single reserved word
MACRO')

WRITE ( 9,10,' on a line. ')

READ (19,30,' Press <CR> ',%A)

EXIT
```

## PUBLIC.MACROARGUMENT

```
MACRO

*

WRITE ( 3,20,'THE MACRO ARGUMENT SPECIFICATION SECTION')

WRITE ( 4,10,'This part consists of one or more argument
specification')

WRITE ( 5,10,'statements directly following the MACRO header. They')

WRITE ( 6,10,'must be on separate lines and can have the following
forms :-')

WRITE ( 8,10,' a. %Arg_Number')

WRITE ( 9,10,' b. %Arg_Number=Default')

WRITE (10,10,' c. %Arg_Number(?Error_message_text)')

WRITE (12,10,'where Arg_Number is a single digit number from 1 to 9
inclusive,')

WRITE (13,10,'Default is a value that is to be used as a default in the
case')

WRITE (14,10,'where an optional argument is not specified in the
command line')

WRITE (15,10,'that invokes the macro, and Error_message_text is the
text of')

WRITE (16,10,'an error message which is to be displayed on the screen
when a')

WRITE (17,10,'required argument is missing from the command line that')

WRITE (18,10,'invokes the macro.')

READ (19,30,'Press <CR> ',%A)

EXIT
```

## PUBLIC.MACROSTATEMENTSE

```
MACRO

*

WRITE ( 3,20,'The MACRO STATEMENT SECTION')

WRITE ( 5,10,'This part consists of one or more macro statements.
These')

WRITE ( 6,10,'statements can be of one of the following types:')

WRITE ( 8,15,' CCL. ')

WRITE ( 9,15,' Conditional.')

WRITE (10,15,' GOTO.')

WRITE (11,15,' Write.')

WRITE (12,15,' Read.')

WRITE (16,10,'These statements are documented in more detail in
the MACRO')

WRITE (17,10,'statements option.')

READ (19,30,'Press <CR> ',%A)

EXIT
```

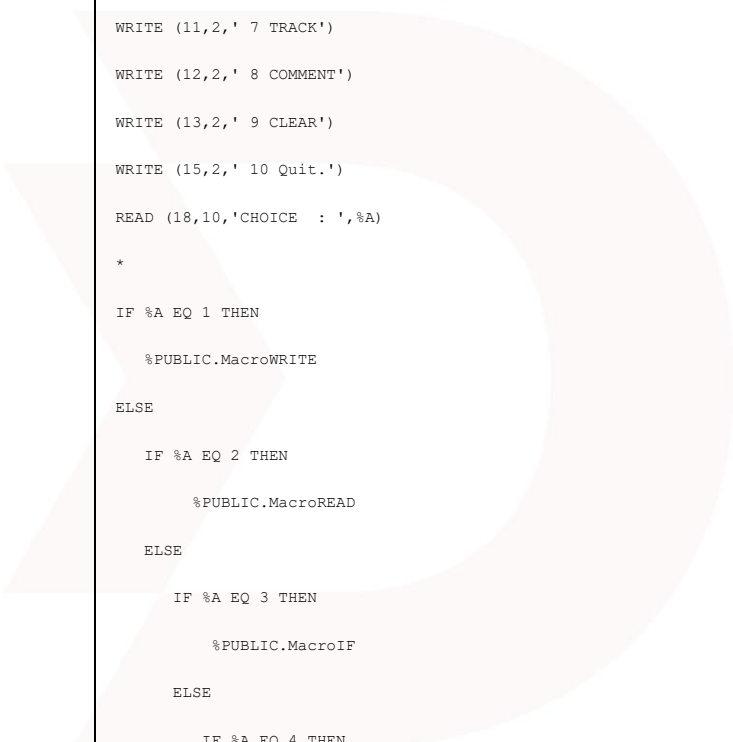
## PUBLIC.MACROSTATEMENTS

```
MACRO

*

- start

WRITE ( 3,2,' Macro Statements.')
```



```
WRITE ( 5,2,' 1 WRITE')

WRITE ( 6,2,' 2 READ')

WRITE ( 7,2,' 3 IF...')

WRITE ( 8,2,' 4 GOTO')

WRITE ( 9,2,' 5 EXIT')

WRITE (10,2,' 6 CCL command')

WRITE (11,2,' 7 TRACK')

WRITE (12,2,' 8 COMMENT')

WRITE (13,2,' 9 CLEAR')

WRITE (15,2,' 10 Quit.')
```

```
READ (18,10,'CHOICE : ',%A)

*

IF %A EQ 1 THEN

    %PUBLIC.MacroWRITE

ELSE

    IF %A EQ 2 THEN

        %PUBLIC.MacroREAD

    ELSE

        IF %A EQ 3 THEN

            %PUBLIC.MacroIF

        ELSE

            IF %A EQ 4 THEN

                %PUBLIC.MacroGOTO

            ELSE

                IF %A EQ 5 THEN

                    %PUBLIC.MacroEXIT

                ELSE

                    IF %A EQ 6 THEN

                        %PUBLIC.MacroCCL

                    ELSE

                        IF %A EQ 7 THEN

                            %PUBLIC.MacroTRACK

                        ELSE
```

```
IF %A EQ 8 THEN  
    %PUBLIC.MacroCOMMENT  
  
ELSE  
  
    IF %A EQ 9 THEN  
        %PUBLIC.MacroCLEAR  
  
    ELSE  
        IF %A EQ 10 THEN  
            GOTO stop  
        ENDIF  
    ENDIF  
ENDIF  
  
ENDIF  
  
ENDIF  
  
ENDIF  
  
ENDIF  
  
ENDIF  
  
GOTO start  
*  
- stop  
EXIT
```

## PUBLIC.MACROWRITE

```
MACRO

WRITE ( 3,2,'The Macro WRITE Statement. ')

WRITE ( 5,2,'This statement will allow a user to write a text
string into the')

WRITE ( 6,2,'Macro window beginning at a particular Row and
Column. The Macro')

WRITE ( 7,2,'window is 19 Rows deep and 78 Columns wide. The text
string to be')

WRITE ( 8,2,'written to the window will be scanned for references
to Macro ')

WRITE ( 9,2,'arguments variables and functions and these will be
resolved ')

WRITE (10,2,'the string is written. The format of the statement
is :-- ')

WRITE (12,2,' WRITE (Row,Column,Text_String) ')

WRITE (14,2,'Any Row or Column Value outside the permitted range
will be ')

WRITE (15,2,'errored. A text string which extends beyond the
maximum ')

WRITE (16,2,'column number will be truncated.')

READ (19,30,'Press <CR> ',%A)

EXIT
```

## PUBLIC.MACROREAD

```
MACRO

*

WRITE ( 4,20,'The READ STATEMENT')

WRITE ( 6,10,'This statement will allow TRIP to read a text
string from')

WRITE ( 7,10,'the macro window into a macro variable.')

WRITE ( 9,10,'Form of the READ statement.')

WRITE (11,10,'READ (Row,Column,Prompt_text,macro_variable)')

WRITE (13,10,'where Row and Column are the Row and Column
respectively where')

WRITE (14,10,'the Prompt_text will start; Prompt_text is the text
to be used')

WRITE (15,10,'as a prompt for the read operation, and
macro_variable is the ')

WRITE (16,10,'variable to which the input string is to be
assigned.')

READ (19,30,'Press <CR> ',%A)

EXIT
```

## PUBLIC.MACROIF

```
MACRO

*

WRITE ( 4,20,'The IF .... STATEMENT.')

WRITE ( 6,10,'This statement will allow the user to test on
various')

WRITE ( 7,10,'conditions and control the execution of
statements')

WRITE ( 8,10,'within the macro.')

WRITE (10,10,'a. Forms of the Conditional statement.')

WRITE (12,10,' i. IF Condition THEN ii. IF Condition THEN')

WRITE (13,10,' Statement[s] Statement1[s]')

WRITE (14,10,' ENDIF ELSE')

WRITE (15,10,' Statement2[s]')

WRITE (16,10,' ENDIF')

READ (19,30,'Press <CR> for more information ....',%A)

CLEAR (10,19)

WRITE (10,10,'b. Form of the Condition.')

WRITE (12,10,' i. Expression Operator Expression')

READ (18,20,'Press <CR> for more information .... ',%A)

CLEAR (10,19)

WRITE (10,10,'c. Forms of the Expression.')

WRITE (12,10,' i. macro argument ')

WRITE (13,10,' ii. macro function ')

WRITE (14,10,' iii. macro variable ')

WRITE (15,10,' iv. list of contents')

WRITE (16,10,'where the constant is a string of characters, and
elements of ')

WRITE (17,10,'the list are separated by a comma.')

READ (19,30,'Press <CR> for mre information .... ',%A)

CLEAR (10,19)

WRITE (10,10,'d. Forms of the Operator.')

WRITE (12,10,' i. EQ Equal to iv. LE Less than or Equal to')

WRITE (13,10,' ii. GE Greater than or Equal to v. LT Less Than')

WRITE (14,10,'iii. GT Greater Than vi. IN contained IN')

WRITE (16,10,'where the IN operator can only be used in the case
where ')

WRITE (17,10,'Expression is a list of more than one constant.')

READ (19,30,'Press <CR> for more information .... ',%A)

CLEAR (10,19)

WRITE (10,10,'e. Form of the statement.')
```

```
WRITE (12,10,'Any macro statement.')
```

```
READ (19,30,'Press <CR> to continue .... ',%A)
```

```
EXIT
```

## PUBLIC.MACROGOTO

```
MACRO
```

```
*
```

```
WRITE ( 4,20,'THE GOTO STATEMENT')
```

```
WRITE ( 6,10,'This statement will allow the user to specify a  
line in the ')
```

```
WRITE ( 7,10,'macro to which flow of control will then go.')
```

```
WRITE ( 9,10,'Form of the GOTO statement.')
```

```
WRITE (11,10,'GOTO label')
```

```
WRITE (13,10,'where the line being specified is preceded by a  
label. A ')
```

```
WRITE (14,10,'label must be in the format "- labelname".')
```

```
READ (19,30,'Press <CR> ',%A)
```

```
EXIT
```

## PUBLIC.MACROEXIT

```
MACRO
```

```
*
```

```
WRITE ( 4,10,'THE EXIT STATEMENT')
```

```
WRITE (10,10,'Every MACRO must end with the single reserved word  
"EXIT"')
```

```
WRITE (11,10,'It appears as the last statement in the macro.')
```

```
READ (19,30,'Press <CR> ',%A)
```

```
EXIT
```

## PUBLIC.MACROCCL

```
MACRO

*

WRITE ( 6,20,'A CCL STATEMENT.')
```

WRITE ( 8,10,'A CCL statement can be any of the commands currently')

WRITE ( 9,10,'recognised by TRIP. A CCL statement will be scanned')

WRITE (10,10,'for references to any of the macro arguments, macro ')

WRITE (11,10,'variables, or macro functions, and these references will')

WRITE (12,10,'be resolved, and the relevant values substituted in the ')

WRITE (13,10,'CCL command. Note that there is currently a limit of 400')

WRITE (14,10,'on the length of any CCL command, and any CCL command which')

WRITE (15,10,'exceeds this limit will be errored. ')

READ (19,30,'Press <CR> ',%A)

EXIT

## PUBLIC.MACROTRACK

```
MACRO

*

WRITE ( 4,20,'THE TRACK COMMAND')
```

WRITE ( 6,10,'This displays the commands in the MACRO onto the screen')

WRITE ( 7,10,'as they are being executed. You can then follow the flow')

WRITE ( 8,10,'of control as the MACRO is running.')

WRITE (10,10,'Form of the statement;-')

WRITE (12,10,'TRACK n')

WRITE (14,10,'where n is the number of seconds that the command is to')

WRITE (15,10,'be displayed before it is actually executed.')

READ (19,30,'Press <RET> ',%A)

\*

EXIT



## PUBLIC.MACROCOMMENT

```
MACRO

*

WRITE ( 4,20,'THE COMMENT STATEMENT')

WRITE ( 8,10,'This consists of a single asterisk (*) at the
beginning of')

WRITE ( 9,10,'any line within the MACRO. Anything following the
asterisk')

WRITE (10,10,'is then ignored.')

WRITE (12,10,'Form of the statement ; -')

WRITE (14,10,'* This is a comment line ')

READ (19,30,'Press <RET> ',%A)

*

EXIT
```

## PUBLIC.MACROCLEAR

```
MACRO

*

WRITE ( 4,20,'THE CLEAR COMMAND')

WRITE ( 8,10,'This allows the screen or part of the screen to be
cleared')

WRITE ( 9,10,'within a MACRO.')

WRITE (11,10,'Form of the statement; -')

WRITE (13,10,'CLEAR (first_row,last_row)')

WRITE (15,10,'where first_row is the first row to be cleared and
last_row')

WRITE (16,10,'is the last row to be cleared.')

READ (19,30,'Press <RET>',%A)

*

EXIT
```

## PUBLIC.MACROFUNCTIONS

```
MACRO

*

* This is a demonstration Macro to display the
*
* MACRO functions that are available at present.
*

WRITE ( 3,10,'The following MACRO functions are currently
available :--')

WRITE ( 5,3,'USER   The current TRIP user is %USER
')

WRITE (6,3,'TIME   The current Time is %TIME
')

WRITE (7,3,'DATE   The current Date is %DATE
')

WRITE (8,3,'BASE   The currently open Database is %BASE
')

WRITE (9,3,'SEAR   The current Search Number is %SEAR
')

WRITE (10,3,'NREC   The number of Records in the current search is
%NREC      ')

WRITE (11,3,'NHIT   The number of Terms found in the current
search is %NHIT  ')

WRITE (12,3,'LANG   The current CCL-Language is %LANG
')

WRITE (13,3,'SUCC   The letter indicating the Success of the most
recently    ')

WRITE (14,3,'       executed CCL-command is %SUCC  ')

WRITE (15,3,'RTNB   The Return Code from the most recent CCL-
command is %RTNB ')

WRITE (16,3,'RTNA   The Return Code from the ASE most recently
called from -

CCL is %RTNA')

READ  (19,30,'Press <CR> ',%A)

EXIT
```

## Part 6:

# Appendices and Index





## Appendix A: CLI Switches

CLI (Command Language Interpreter) switches act from the system prompt to facilitate many processes in TRIP, including logging in, direct access to data entry and search forms and CCL and TRIP version and language control. These are outlined in the table below, with the shortest form permitted for each (if available) indicated by the upper-case, bolded letters.

Switch	Legal Values	Function
-u <i>username</i>	any valid TRIP user name	entry of TRIP username
-p <i>password</i>	any valid TRIP password	entry of TRIP user password
-t <i>terminal type</i>	TTY, VT100, VT200 and site-dependent	specification of terminal type
-s Ccl	Ccl	specifies direct entry into the CCL command window
-C ' <b>CCL command</b> '	any valid CCL command, procedure or macro	Begins the CCL session with the execution of the order or TRIP procedure specified by <b>CCL command</b> . Single quotes are necessary only if the CCL order to be run contains spaces.
-q	none	Runs a procedure without echoing the executed commands to the CCL window when used in conjunction with the -C ' <b>CCL command</b> ' switch.
-s Forms	Forms	specifies direct entry into forms searching
-S <i>formname</i>	any valid search form name	specifies direct entry to forms search, using the search form named
-o	none	when used in conjunction with the CLI search switches, restricts the user to that portion of TRIP to which he or she has been directed, i.e. CCL, search forms or data entry
-e <b>option</b>	Add, Modify or Delete	specifies direct access to the desired data entry option using the values Add, Modify or Delete (the default is Add)
-e <b>option</b> <i>database_name</i>	Add, Modify or Delete and any valid database name	specifies direct access to the desired data entry option and database using the options Add, Modify or Delete and the database name provided. If a default data entry form has not been defined for the database named, the user will be prompted for a data entry form name.
-c <i>character set</i>	CHI, DAN, ENG, FIN, GER, LA1, LA2, LA3, MUL, NOR, ROM, SWE, YUG	specifies a TRIP national character set (needed only when running TRIP from a 7-bit terminal and using a non-English character set). The default is <b>MULT</b> inational.
-I <i>language</i>	CHI, DAN, ENG, FIN, FRE, GER, ITA, NOR, SWE	designates a national variant of the command language CCL with which the user speaks to TRIP and TRIP to the user. The ANSI/CCL standard is <b>ENGLISH</b> .
-L <i>language</i>	CHI, DAN, ENG, FIN, FRE, GER, ITA, NOR, SWE	specifies a national variant of the command language CCL with which the user speaks to TRIP, and will override any user-to-TRIP setting defined with the / <b>L</b> anguage or -I switch.
-f <i>filename</i>	any valid filename	creates a log file of the CCL orders given in a particular session. If no file name is specified, the log file will be named trip.log.

Table A-1 CLI Switches



## CLI Examples

To start TRIP using one or more UNIX/Windows CLI switches, type

```
trip
```

and the switch or switch combination at the system prompt, then press ↵.

Here are three examples:

```
trip -u dawn -p ad -f try.log -s ccl
```

starts TRIP for user 'Dawn', whose TRIP password is 'ad' and whose CCL orders will be written to a log file named 'try.log', and who will enter the CCL command window directly.

```
trip -u john -o -s ccl -C john1
```

starts TRIP for user 'John', will send him directly to the command window, limit him to *only* that window and execute the procedure called 'john1'.

```
trip -L eng -l swe
```

starts TRIP with all menus and text in Swedish and all CCL commands in English.

## Appendix B:

### Keyboard Key Combinations for Emulating VT Keypad Keys

TRIPclassic was developed for use on DEC VT terminals, hence it has inherited the key mappings for an extended VT keyboard. As some keyboards do not have all keypad keys mapped (particularly those on laptops) TRIPclassic incorporates a mechanism whereby certain keyboard key combinations emulate the keys. These combinations are as follows:

#### **Emulate <PF1>, <PF2>, <PF3> and <PF4>:**

Press <Ctrl> and <F> together, then press the respective number key, i.e. <1> to <4>.

#### **Emulate the keypad number keys:**

Press <Ctrl> and <K> together, then press the respective number key, i.e. <1> to <9>.

#### **Emulate the keypad keys, < . >, < , > and < - >**

Press <Ctrl> and <K> together, then press the respective keys, i.e. < . >, < , > and < - >.

#### **Emulate the keys <Page Up>, <Page Down>, <Backspace> and keypad <Enter>**

For <Page Up> (or <Next page>), press <Ctrl> and <N> together.

For <Page Down> (or <Prev page>), press <Ctrl> and <P> together.

For <Backspace>, press <Ctrl> and <b> together.

For Keypad <Enter>, press <Ctrl> and <e> together.

Should it become necessary to remap a terminal emulation's keys, then the above key combinations should suffice.

*Note:*

*In the TRIPclassic for windows interface, when using a standard 102 key keyboard, the VT keypad function keys <PF1> to <PF4> are transposed to the PC function keys <F1> to <F4> respectively.*



## List of Figures

Figure 1–1	The Logon screen for TRIPclassic .....	15
Figure 1–2	The Primary Option Menu.....	15
Figure 1–3	The Search submenu screen .....	16
Figure 1–4	The CCL Search screen.....	16
Figure 1–5	The BAsE screen .....	17
Figure 1–6	The BAsE Corr screen .....	17
Figure 1–7	The first search screen.....	18
Figure 1–8	The second search screen .....	19
Figure 1–9	The third search screen .....	19
Figure 1–10	The Show window .....	20
Figure 1–11	Screen output navigation commands.....	21
Figure 1–12	More of the Show window.....	22
Figure 2–1	The Effect of AND, OR, XOR and NOT .....	26
Figure 2–2	The structure of database Corr .....	28
Figure 2–3	A Display list in the Display window .....	30
Figure 2–4	A Display list from a PHrase field .....	31
Figure 2–5	Format 1, screen one of three.....	33
Figure 2–6	Format 1, screen two of three .....	33
Figure 2–7	Format 1, screen three of three .....	33
Figure 2–8	Format 2 .....	34
Figure 2–9	A run-time format, screen one of two.....	35
Figure 2–10	A run-time format, screen two of two .....	35
Figure 2–11	SStatus Corr, screen one of three .....	38
Figure 2–12	SStatus Corr, screen two of three.....	38
Figure 2–13	SStatus Corr, screen three of three.....	38
Figure 2–14	List of DEfine defaults .....	41
Figure 3–1	SStatus order for Alice, screen one of two.....	54
Figure 3–2	SStatus order for Alice, screen two of two.....	55

Figure 4–1	The Form Search window .....	62
Figure 4–2	The Form Search prompt.....	63
Figure 4–3	The search form screen for Alice_Demo.....	63
Figure 4–4	The anatomy of a search form .....	63
Figure 4–5	An initial search using Alice_Demo.....	64
Figure 4–6	Displaying the result .....	65
Figure 4–7	The Change Format sub-option box .....	66
Figure 4–8	The search form screen for Alice_Demo2.....	67
Figure 4–9	Show menu options for Alice_Demo2.....	69
Figure 4–10	Possible CCL search combinations .....	69
Figure 5–1	The record sequence when opening two multifiles.....	80
Figure 5–2	FRom, TO and the Closed Range.....	90
Figure 5–3	Examples of DEfine MAXimum orders .....	97
Figure 6–4	Thesaurus elements .....	103
Figure 6–1	Display CT.....	109
Figure 6–2	Display BT .....	110
Figure 6–3	Display RT.....	110
Figure 6–4	Display UP.....	111
Figure 6–5	Display DOWN .....	112
Figure 6–6	Tree structure of thesaurus Thesali .....	113
Figure 6–7	The ‘Food’ tree of thesaurus Thesali .....	113
Figure 6–8	The ‘Flowers’ tree.....	113
Figure 6–9	The ‘Animals’ tree .....	113
Figure 6–10	The ‘Persons’ tree.....	113
Figure 8–1	The relationship between head and part records.....	131
Figure 8–2	Carroll’s head and part record structure .....	132
Figure 8–3	A head record .....	132
Figure 8–4	A part record .....	133
Figure 8–5	A record entity.....	133

Figure 8–6	A record .....	133
Figure 8–7	Components of a record.....	133
Figure 8–8	Part record operators.....	134
Figure 8–9	PARt SORt output.....	138
Figure 9–1	The Show EForm screen .....	145
Figure 9–2	The SStatus Corr screen.....	146
Figure 9–3	The data entry submenu screen .....	147
Figure 9–4	The Add Records box.....	147
Figure 9–5	The Data Entry screen 'Full', screen one of two .....	148
Figure 9–6	The Data Entry screen 'Full', screen two of two .....	149
Figure 9–7	The Number Keypad data entry keys .....	150
Figure 9–8	Data entry into database Corr, screen one of two .....	152
Figure 9–9	Data entry into database Corr, screen two of two.....	152
Figure 9–10	The Modify Records box .....	155
Figure 9–11	A modify record screen, screen one of two.....	156
Figure 9–12	Record modification, screen one of two .....	156
Figure 9–13	Record modification, screen two of two.....	156
Figure 9–14	The Delete Records box .....	158
Figure 9–15	Record deletion, screen one .....	158
Figure 10–1	The Change Password suboption box.....	161
Figure 10–2	The Change Password window .....	161
Figure 10–3	The Change Profile suboption box.....	162
Figure 10–4	The User Profile window .....	162
Figure 10–5	Changing the Date Format .....	164
Figure 10–6	The Date Form box.....	164
Figure 10–7	Changing the first separator .....	164
Figure 10–8	Changing the second separator.....	164
Figure 11–1	The Show Procedure screen.....	168
Figure 11–2	The Forms and Procedures suboption box.....	169

Figure 11–3	The Procedure suboption box .....	169
Figure 11–4	The Create/Modify Procedure/Macro screen.....	170
Figure 11–5	Creating the procedure 'Culinary' .....	170
Figure 11–6	The Copy Procedure/Macro screen .....	174
Figure 11–7	The Delete Procedure/Macro screen .....	176



## List of Tables

Table 5- 1	AND Operator forms .....	85
Table 12- 1	Macro functions .....	185
Table 12- 2	IF Statement Conditional Operators.....	188
Table A-1	CLI Switches .....	205



## Index

- symbol .....	166	<Delete> .....	152
! symbol .....	153	<End of Field> .....	152
# symbol .....	19, 28	<End of Line> .....	152
<Gold>		<Enter> .....	8
<Gold><H> .....	175	<Field> .....	152
<Help>		<Gold> .....	152
and data entry .....	150	<Gold><C> .....	16, 161
\$ symbol .....	57	<Gold><D> .....	153, 160
%		<Gold><Delete> .....	152
macrohelp .....	193	<Gold><H> .....	20, 22, 149
% symbol .....	180, 182	<Gold><I> .....	161
. . symbol .....	29	<Gold><Keypad 0> .....	152, 153
. symbol .....	153, 166	<Gold><Leave> .....	23, 64
/ symbol .....	166	<Gold><N> .....	21
: symbol .....	57, 166	<Gold><P> .....	21
? symbol .....	153, 180, 181	<Gold><Page> .....	152
< symbol .....	27	<Gold><R> .....	25, 147
<↓ Arrow> .....	20, 31, 33, 65	<Gold><S> .....	20, 160
<↑ Arrow> .....	21	<Gold><Tab> .....	64, 65, 66, 67
<= symbol .....	27	<Gold><X> .....	161
<Advance> .....	152	<Gold><Y> .....	161
<Back Up> .....	152	as convention .....	8
<Back> .....	152	<Gold><Recall> .....	147
<Backspace> .....	16	<Keypad 0> .....	152
<Character> .....	152	<Leave> .....	23, 64, 149
<CTRL>		as convention .....	8
<CTRL><A> .....	151		
<Delete Line> .....	64		

<Next page> .....	8	description of.....	54
<Next> .....	21, 33, 65	search form	
as convention.....	8	Alice_Demo.....	61
<Page down>.....	8	Alice_Demo2.....	61
<Page up> .....	8	STatus .....	54
<Page> .....	152	Alice_Demo	
<PF1> .....	8	search form.....	61, 63, 64
<PF3> .....	8	Alice_Demo2	
<Prev> .....	21, 33	search form.....	61
as convention.....	8	options .....	68
<Previous page> .....	8	Alternative search conditions .....	25, 100
<PREVious> .....	65	Amending records .....	156
<Return>.....	8	AND.....	19, 25
<Scroll Field>.....	152	AND.C .....	136
<Select> .....	30, 67, 68, 153	AND.E.....	136
<Tab> .....	64	AND.R .....	136
<Word> .....	152	vs. OR.....	25
= symbol .....	27	vs. OR, XOR and NOT .....	26
> symbol .....	27, 31	Argument specification	
>= symbol .....	27	macro.....	185
Add records		Arguments	
box, entry form .....	150	macro.....	186
screen		Asterisk	
data entry .....	149	macro.....	190
Adding records.....	154	Auto-tutorial sessions .....	10
Advanced searching .....	10	Back	
Alice database .....	8, 10	command.....	21, 31
and thesaurus searching.....	108	BASe	
compared to Carroll.....	133		

listing available databases with .....	16	<u>TRIP and</u> .....	17, 63
order .....	17	Case_Study database .....	119
screen.....	17	Cat - field in database Corr .....	27
Bigram .....	29	Cause&Effect database .....	119
Bold		CCL	
as convention.....	8	and history list .....	36
Box		and TRIP recognition .....	10
Display.....	30	command box.....	16
Open Database		command expansion in History box .....	17
and double chevron (..>>).....	20	in search forms .....	69
search form		Open Database box .....	16
command .....	61	search	
search result.....	61	BASE Corr screen.....	17
Search History .....	17	first screen .....	18
Show		menu option .....	8
example .....	20, 21, 22	screen.....	16
BT .....	105, 106	second screen .....	19
Display.....	111	third screen.....	19
Carroll database .....	10, 133	Search History box.....	17
chapter information in.....	133	Show area .....	17
compared to Alice.....	133	starting.....	16
paragraph information in.....	134	CCL statement	
records		macro.....	188
chapter .....	134	Change password window .....	163
main.....	134	Chapter - field in database Alice .....	64
paragraph .....	134	Chaptnr - field in database Alice .....	67
sub .....	134	Character	
<u>Case insensitivity</u>		sentence-ending.....	153



CHarset	Top.....21
CLI switch ..... 207	Command box ..... 16
Chevron ..... 33	COMMENT statement
and 'more text...' ..... 20	macro.....190
as convention..... 8	Common Command Language..... see CCL
CLEAR statement	Component
macro ..... 189	in head/part database .....135
CLI switch	<u>Condition</u>
CHarset..... 207	<u>search</u> .....19
LAngeage..... 207	reference to earlier search result as.....19
LOg ..... 207	word as.....19
CLI switches ..... 10	Conditions
Cluster ..... 80	macro.....189
Command	Content - field in database Corr .....27
Back..... 21	Continuation character (-), and procedures.172
BASe	CONTInue .....87
listing available databases with..... 16	Conventions
box	<Gold> .....8
search form ..... 61	<Leave>.....8
Display..... 29	<Next> .....8
Find ..... 18	<Prev>.....8
More..... 20	boldface .....8
<b>previous, recalling</b> ..... 36	chevrons .....8
Print..... 22	Courier fonts.....8
Search Form ..... 62	italic .....8
SElect Record ..... 30	left arrow .....8
Show..... 20	lower case.....8
STOP ..... 23	space character .....8

upper case.....	8	Data checking.....	146
Corr		flag first occurrence.....	146
data entry		mandatory value.....	146
screen one .....	154	pattern matching.....	146
data entry		value matching .....	146
screen two.....	154	Data dictionary.....	29
database		Data entry.....	10, 145
default output format .....	32	<Help> .....	150
default output format 1 .....	33	<Gold><R> in .....	147
opening.....	17, 25	add records.....	150, 154
output format 2.....	34	add records screen .....	149
predefined output formats .....	32	database Corr .....	150
searching .....	18	screen one.....	154
STatus .....	38, 148	screen two .....	154
structure.....	13, 27	DAte fields .....	153
DElete record .....	160	default	
modify record		paragraph definition .....	153
screen one .....	158	sentence definition .....	153
screen two.....	158	DEfine EForm .....	148
Corr database .....	10	DElete records screen.....	160
data entry in.....	150	deleting records.....	159
STatus.....	38	from Primary Option Menu .....	159
<u>Count</u>		from system prompt .....	159
<u>hit record</u> .....	18	Display .....	153
Courier fonts		editing keys.....	152
as convention.....	8	exit from .....	156
CT.....	105, 106	form	
Display.....	110		

access		<u>Data tuple</u> .....	96
from CCL .....	148	Data type	
from Primary Option Menu .....	149	DAte .....	18
from system prompt .....	148	in data entry from Full .....	152
entry boxes in .....	145	PHrase .....	18
entry field characteristics .....	145	search default .....	27
Full .....	150	TExt .....	18
literals in .....	145	Tlme .....	18
using .....	148	Database	
listing available entry forms .....	147	Alice .....	10
modify records screen .....	157	compared to Carroll .....	133
modifying records .....	156	description of .....	54
from CCL .....	156	search form Alice_Demo .....	61
from Primary Option Menu .....	157	search form Alice_Demo2 .....	61
from system prompt .....	156	STatus .....	54
PHrase fields .....	153	Carroll .....	10, 133
record locking .....	154	chapter information in .....	133
saving records .....	155	compared to Alice .....	133
screen Full .....	150, 151	paragraph information in .....	134
screen movement keys .....	151	records	
Show EForm .....	147	chapter .....	134
submenu screen .....	149	main .....	134
TExt fields .....	153	paragraph .....	134
Tlme fields .....	153	sub .....	134
window .....	150	Case_Study .....	119
with record parts .....	160	Cause&Effect .....	119
<b>Data input</b> .....	145	Corr .....	10, 18

data entry in .....	150	in TRIP .....	26, 166
default output format 1 .....	33	Day	
opening.....	17, 25	field in database Corr .....	26, 27
output format 2.....	34	<u>Default</u>	
predefined output formats .....	32	data entry paragraph definition .....	153
structure .....	13, 27	data entry sentence definition .....	153
head/part		data types	
and SStatus .....	133	in searching.....	29
component .....	135	in searching.....	26, 27
head record .....	134	formats	
part record .....	134	viewing with DEfine order .....	40
record .....	135	order	
record entity.....	135	in SORT .....	37
Holidays.....	96	output format for Corr .....	32
searching		printer queue.....	22
more than one.....	79	<u>record format in Corr</u> .....	22
Thesali .....	10	thesaurus	
<b>vocabulary</b> .....	29	exact phrase matching.....	108
Database box.....	16	fields to be searched.....	108
and double chevron(..>>).....	20	search term	
Databases		destination fields.....	108
displaying list of available .....	16	source fields .....	108
DAte.....	36	values	
and database Corr.....	18	application-dependent custom.....	145
field type .....	13	current date .....	145
<b>in searching</b> .....	26	current time .....	145
Date formats		data entry.....	145

operating system user name.....	145	order .....	46
TimeSTAMP .....	145	record	
TRIP/TDBS user name.....	145	database Corr.....	160
DEfine		screen.....	160
AND=		Deleting	
AND.C .....	137	record parts .....	161
AND.E .....	137	records.....	159
AND.R .....	137	Deselect .....	30
command word.....	8	Diagram	
EForm .....	148	Venn.....	26
MAP.....	119	Display .....	29
as related to DEfine THESaurus.....	107	and thesaurus.....	110
MAXimum.....	131	box .....	30
similarity to DEfine THESaurus.....	122	BT.....	111
order		command.....	29
viewing default formats with .....	40	CT.....	110
THESaurus .....	107, 108	DOWN.....	113
active thesaurus .....	108	in data entry forms.....	153
as related to DEfine MAP .....	107	list .....	30
database destination fields .....	108	from PHrase field .....	31
elements to be searched.....	108	moving through a.....	31
exact matching .....	108	selecting from .....	30
similarity to DEfine MAP .....	122	term numbers in .....	30
source elements.....	108	NT .....	113
using with run-time formats .....	34	order .....	29
DEfine? .....	110	PHrase.....	31
DElete		RT.....	112

search form .....	67	EXIT statement	
single field .....	32	macro .....	191
sort on frequency .....	100	EXPORT .....	169
UP .....	113	External transaction sets .....	130
window .....	30	<b>Field</b>	
Displaying results .....	15	<u>description</u> .....	13
DOWN		head .....	133
Display .....	113	indexed	
Dump default output format .....	22	in SStatus display .....	39
Echoing (of characters to screen) .....	15	long PHrase .....	146
Editing keys		mandatory	
<Backspace> .....	16	in SStatus display .....	39
EForm		name .....	13
DEfine .....	148	<u>part</u> .....	133
Show .....	147	<u>in SStatus display</u> .....	39
Entity		protected .....	146
record .....	135	read-only .....	146
<b>Entry</b>		search form .....	61
<b>of data</b> .....	145	sticky .....	147
Entry form		'always' .....	147
add records box .....	150	'recallable' .....	147
Entry forms		immediate .....	147
listing .....	147	on request .....	147
<b>Error Messages and Help</b>		type	
<PF2> Help Key .....	42	DAte .....	13
<PF2> Help Key Error Message .....	42	in TRIP .....	13
Examples		INteger .....	13, 27
macro .....	192		

Number .....	13, 27	Full	
PHrase .....	13	data entry screen.....	150, 151
STring.....	13	modify record screen .....	158
TExt.....	13	Full stop - in searching.....	29
Time.....	13, 27	Functions	
types		macro.....	186
in data entry form Full.....	152	Fuzzy	
virtual		logic .....	78
and DEfine MAP .....	119	searching .....	74
Find.....	18	GOTO statement	
and		macro.....	190
thesaurus.....	110	Head	
PHrase .....	28	field .....	133
Flag first occurrence .....	146	record .....	133, 134
FOcus		<b>Head and part records.....</b>	<b>133</b>
Show		defining terms .....	134
vs.show format=<fieldnames> .....	49	output.....	138
<u>Format</u> .....	34	output and sorting.....	138
<u>default record in Corr</u> .....	22	searching .....	136
output		sorting	
changing .....	34	general SORT .....	138
default,defining .....	34	PART SORT.....	138
run-time		Head/part database	
Show vs. DEfine .....	34	AND	
Show		AND.C.....	136
=<fieldnames> vs. Show FOcus .....	49	AND.E .....	136
FRequency .....	92	AND.R.....	136
FRom.....	27	and SStatus .....	133

component.....	135	IF statement	
head record.....	134	macro.....	189
NOT		IMPOrt.....	169
NOT.C .....	136	Index .....	29
NOT.E.....	136	field	
NOT.R .....	136	in SStatus display.....	39
part record .....	134	Indexed records.....	17
record.....	135	<b>Indirect searching</b> .....	119
record entity .....	135	and exact matching .....	125
Header		broadening the search.....	126
macro .....	185	reference to an earlier search .....	126
Help		sets	
using		maximum limits .....	130
from CCL .....	42	transaction sets	
Highlighting		external .....	130
screen		internal.....	128
in Show .....	22	Inserting	
History		record parts .....	161
list		INteger .....	36
in CCL .....	36	data type.....	13
window entries		field type.....	27
automatic		Internal transaction sets.....	128
capitalization in.....	26	<b>Introduction</b> .....	12
date expansion in.....	26	Italic	
space insertion in.....	26	as convention .....	8
<u>Hit records</u> .....	18	Keypad Emulation	
<u>hit record count</u> .....	18	< - > .....	210
Holidays database .....	96	< , > .....	210



< . >.....	210	CLI switch.....	207
< Backspace >.....	210	Left arrow	
< Page Down > .....	210	as convention .....	8
< Page Up > .....	210	LET statement	
<PF1>.....	210	macro.....	189
<PF2>.....	210	List	
<PF3>.....	210	Display .....	30
<PF4>.....	210	from PHrase field .....	31
Key combinations.....	210	moving through .....	31
keypad < Enter > .....	210	selecting from .....	30
Keys		term numbers in .....	30
data entry		history	
number keypad .....	152	in CCL .....	36
screen movement .....	151	Literal	
editing		search form.....	61
<Delete Line>.....	64	LOg	
screen movement		CLI switch.....	207
<↓ Arrow> .....	65	<b>Logging on</b> .....	15
<Gold><Leave>.....	64	screen for.....	15
<Gold><Tab> .....	64, 65, 66, 67	Logic	
<Leave> .....	64	fuzzy.....	78
<Next> .....	21, 65	Logical	
<Prev>.....	21	operator.....	26
<PREVious>.....	65	AND .....	19, 25
<Select> .....	67, 68	head/part	
<Tab>.....	64	AND	
Language		AND.C.....	136
		AND.E.....	136

AND.R .....	136	LET statement.....	189
NOT		nested .....	186
NOT.C .....	136	normal text attribute.....	188
NOT.E .....	136	operator.....	189
NOT.R .....	136	public macroargument .....	195
NOT.....	25	public.macroccl.....	202
OR.....	25	public.macroclear .....	203
XOR.....	25	public.macrocomment .....	203
Logical operators		public.macroexit.....	201
effect of.....	26	public.macrogoto .....	201
<b>Login</b> .....	15	public.macroheader .....	195
screen.....	15	PUBLIC.MACROHELP.....	193
Long PHrase field .....	146	public.macroif.....	200
Lower case		public.macroread.....	199
as convention.....	8	public.macrostatements.....	197
Macro		public.macrostatementse.....	196
arguments .....	186	Public.macrostructure .....	194
asterisk.....	190	public.macrotrack.....	202
CCL .....	188	public.macrowrite .....	199
CLEAR statement.....	189	READ statement .....	188
COMMENT .....	190	statement .....	188
conditions .....	189	structure .....	185
examples .....	192	text string.....	188, 189
EXIT statement.....	191	track statement .....	190
functions .....	186	variables .....	186
GOTO.....	190	window .....	188
header.....	185	WRITE .....	188
IF 189			

macroargument.....	195	MERGe	
Macroargument		qualifier.....	81
public.....	195	Messages	
Macrocc1 .....	202	TRIP error	
Macroexit .....	201	where displayed.....	41
macrogoto.....	201	Microprocedure.....	182
Macroheader		MINimum .....	98
public.macroheader .....	195	Moddate - field in database Corr.....	26, 27
Macrohelp .....	193	Modified - field in database Corr .....	27
Macroif.....	200	Modifier	
macroread.....	199	NOT	
Macros.....	10	compared to AND operator .....	47
Macrostatements .....	197	Modify	
Macrostatementse .....	196	record	
public.macrostatementse .....	196	database Corr	
Macrostructure		screen one.....	158
public.macrostructure .....	194	screen two.....	158
macrowrite .....	199	screen Full.....	158
Main record.....	133	screen, data entry .....	157
Mandatory field		Modnote - field in database Corr.....	27
in SStatus display.....	39	Modtime - field in database Corr.....	26, 27
Masking		More	
symbol		command.....	20, 31
\$ 57		More text... symbol.....	20, 33
<b>Masking</b> .....	57	<u>Multifile</u> .....	79
Mathematical operator .....	27	<b>Negative searching</b> .....	47
MAXimum .....	97	Nested	
DEfine MAP .....	131	macro.....	186
MEasure .....	92	Nesting	

procedures .....	171	AND.C.....	136
Normal		AND.E.....	136
macro text attribute.....	188	AND.R.....	136
NOT .....	25	NOT	
modifier		NOT.C.....	136
compared to AND operator.....	47	NOT.E .....	136
NOT.C .....	136	NOT.R.....	136
NOT.E .....	136	NOT .....	25
NOT.R .....	136	OR.....	25
vs. AND, OR and XOR .....	26	XOR .....	25
NR .....	105	macro.....	189
NT.....	105, 106	mathematical.....	27
Display.....	113	Operators	
<u>Number</u>		effect of .....	26
<u>record</u> .....	22	OR.....	25, 31
using in searching.....	48	vs. AND, XOR and NOT.....	26
NUMber .....	36	<u>Order</u>	
data type .....	13	BASE.....	17
field type .....	27	listing available databases with .....	16
<b>in searching</b> .....	26	DElete.....	46
Open Database		Display .....	29
window		<u>previous command</u> .....	25
and double chevron (..>>).....	20	Print .....	22
Operator		<u>recall command</u> .....	25
logical .....	26	<u>search</u> .....	12
AND .....	25	<u>and AND</u> .....	19
head/part		Search Form.....	62
AND			

SElect Record .....	30	Printer	
Show.....	20	queue	
STOP .....	23	default.....	22
Output		Printing	
format		search results.....	15, 22
changing .....	34	Procedures	
default, defining .....	34	accessing.....	171
system default.....	22	and ? symbol.....	180
<b>formats</b> .....	32	and continuation character (-) .....	172
Part		and search numbering in History .....	173
<u>field</u> .....	133	<b>arguments</b> .....	180
<u>in Status display</u> .....	39	body segment .....	180
record.....	133, 134	head segment .....	180
data entry .....	160	mandatory .....	180
Password.....	15	classes of.....	169
<b>changing</b> .....	163	conflicting names .....	169
Person - field in database Alice.....	67	copying .....	176
PHrase.....	36	creating.....	172
and database Corr.....	18	creating.....	170
data type .....	13	customized error message text in .....	180
field		deleting.....	177
long.....	146	<b>display list</b> .....	170
Primary Option Menu .....	15, 62, 164, 175	from SAVE orders .....	178
and searching.....	15	and necessary CCL statements .....	178
Print		group .....	169
command .....	22	length limit for expanded orders.....	172
commands.....	87	local search result numbering in .....	179
order .....	22		

microprocedure .....	182	Public.macrocomment	
modifying .....	173	macrocomment .....	203
modifying .....	170	PUBLIC.MACROHELP .....	193
nested		Public.macroif	
creating.....	175	macroif.....	200
nesting.....	171, 174	Public.macrotrack	
levels in.....	174	macrotrack.....	202
parameters.....	180	Raddr - field in database Corr.....	27
private.....	169	Ranking	
public.....	169	relevance .....	78
rules for writing.....	171	Rcomp - field in database Corr .....	27
Show		Rcountry - field in database Corr .....	27
screen .....	170	READ statement	
testing .....	173	macro.....	188
with DElete S=ALL.....	174	<b>Recall</b>	
text substitution.....	182	<b>of previous command</b> .....	36
Protected fields .....	146	<u>Record</u>	
Public		<u>description of a</u>	
.macrogoto.....	201	<u>in database Corr</u> .....	13
macroccl.....	202	in head/part database .....	135
macroexit .....	201	head.....	133, 134
macroread.....	199	locking.....	154
macrowrite.....	199	main.....	133
Public macrostatements		modify	
macro .....	197	definition.....	156
Public.macroclear		<u>number</u> .....	22
macroclear .....	203	searching using .....	48
		part .....	133, 134

deleting.....	161	Relevance ranking.....	78
inserting.....	161	Renaming	
name field.....	160	record parts .....	161
renaming .....	161	Results	
selecting .....	160	search	
sub.....	133	moving through	
unit, in head/part database .....	135	backward (up) one page.....	21
Record entity.....	135	commands for .....	20
Record part		forward (down) one page .....	20
data entry.....	160	one line at a time .....	20
deleting .....	161	one page at a time .....	20
inserting .....	161	one record at a time.....	21
renaming.....	161	several lines at a time.....	20
selecting.....	160	to next record.....	21
Records		to previous record .....	21
<b>head and part</b> .....	133	to top of current record .....	21
defining terms .....	134	REVerse	
output.....	138	modifier .....	81
output and sorting.....	138	RT .....	105, 106
searching .....	136	Display .....	112
sorting		Run-time format	
general SORT .....	138	example .....	35
PART SORT.....	138	using DEfine .....	34
<u>hit</u> .....	18	Saddr - field in database Corr .....	27
indexed.....	17	Saving records.....	155
saving .....	155	Scomp - field in database Corr .....	27
searchable.....	17	S <b>Co</b> pe	
		<b>limit</b> .....	83

Scope note.....	105	Alice_Demo2	
Scountry - field in database Corr.....	27	options .....	68
Screen		anatomy.....	63
BAsE .....	17	command window.....	64
BAsE Corr .....	17	form message line .....	64
CCL search .....	16	form report line.....	64
data entry		form result box.....	64
submenu.....	149	search entry window.....	63
first search .....	18, 19	search report window .....	63
logging on.....	15	TRIP message line.....	64
login .....	15	and Views.....	68
Primary Option Menu .....	15	combination CCL statements .....	69
search		cursor movement in.....	64
submenu.....	16	Display.....	67, 68
Show EForm .....	147	<b>elements</b> .....	61
SDI		command boxes .....	61
orders.....	94	literals.....	61
<u>Search</u>		result boxes .....	61
<u>condition</u> .....	19	search fields .....	61
reference to earlier search result as .....	19	modifying searches .....	66
word as .....	19	new search.....	64
conditions		scrolling in.....	65
specifying alternative .....	25	Show .....	65
<b>form</b>		History	
access .....	62	box .....	17
CCL .....	62	leaving .....	23
Show Search Form .....	62	<u>order</u> .....	12
Alice_Demo .....	63, 64		



<u>and AND</u> .....	19	<b>for empty and non-empty fields</b> .....	47
modifiers .....	27	<b>for NUMbers</b> .....	26
results		<b>for Times</b> .....	26
boxes for.....	61	fuzzy.....	74
moving through		head and part records .....	136
commands for.....	20	head/part records	
<b>printing</b> .....	22	operators .....	136
shown in search history window.....	19	<b>indirect</b> .....	119
session		and functions with arguments.....	121
ending.....	15, 23, 42	and virtual fields .....	119
specifying upper and lower limits.....	29	broadening the search.....	126
submenu screen.....	16	DEfine MAP .....	119
Search Form.....	62	exact matching in.....	125
<b>Search results</b>		maximum limits .....	130
<b>SORTing</b> .....	36	process.....	119
Searchable records.....	17	reference to an earlier search .....	126
Searching		source database.....	119
advanced.....	10	source field .....	119
basic .....	15	target databases .....	119
by field name .....	57	transaction sets	
by minutes and seconds .....	91	external .....	130
database		internal .....	128
more than one.....	79	<b>negative</b> .....	47
<b>default data types in</b> .....	26	one of several open databases.....	82
delimiting a whole phrase.....	56	tupled fields.....	96
for a whole phrase .....	55	using record numbers.....	48
<b>for DAtes</b> .....	26	Select Record.....	30

Selecting		Sname - field in database Corr .....	27
record parts.....	160		
<b>Session</b>		<b>SORT</b>	
<b>search</b>		and head/part records.....	138
<b>ending</b> .....	42	default order in.....	37
<u>Set of databases</u> .....	79	descending	
<b>Show</b>		performing a .....	37
area .....	17	modifier .....	81
box		PART .....	138
example .....	20, 21, 22	<b>SORTing search results</b> .....	36
command .....	20	Source database .....	126
EForm .....	147	Space character	
screen .....	147	as convention .....	8
FOcus		Speaker - field in database Alice .....	67
vs.Show		Statement	
Format=<fieldnames>.....	49	macro.....	188
order .....	20	STatus.....	38
Search Form .....	62	and database Alice .....	54
using with run-time formats .....	34	and head/part databases .....	133
window		Sticky fields .....	147
example .....	20, 21, 22	'always' .....	147
<b>Show Format=&lt;fieldnames&gt;</b>		'recallable' .....	147
vs. Show FOCus.....	49	immediate .....	147
<b>Sign</b>		on request .....	147
equalto - in searching.....	27	<b>STOP</b>	
greaterthan - in searching.....	27	command.....	23
lessthan - in searching.....	27	order .....	23
<b>SN</b> .....	105	STring	
		data type.....	13

Structure	Term number .....	105
macro .....	TExt.....	36
Sub - record .....	and database Corr .....	18
Symbol	data type.....	13
‘More text...’ .....	Text string	
truncation	macro.....	188, 189
# 19, 28	Thesali database .....	10, 114
: 57	structure .....	114
<u>Symbols</u>	Thesaurus	
<u>in searching</u> .....	‘used for’ term.....	105
Symptom - field in database Cause&Effect	and CCL commands .....	110
System	and free-text searching .....	105
manager	broader term .....	105
and logging on to TRIP.....	controlled term.....	105
Tab	definition of .....	105
as convention .....	Display in .....	110
<u>Term</u> .....	elements.....	105
‘child’ .....	Find in .....	110
‘parent’ .....	narrower term .....	105
‘sibling’ .....	netlike structure .....	105
broader .....	related term.....	105
controlled.....	scope note .....	105
defining, for head/part records .....	search exercises.....	115
narrower .....	searching	
related.....	and Alice database.....	108
top	structure .....	105
in thesaurus.....	term number .....	105
used for .....	top term.....	106

treelike structure .....	105	TIMEForm .....	91
<b>THESaurus</b>		<b>Times</b>	
broader term:.....	106	<b>in searching</b> .....	26
controlled term:.....	105	Timestamp.....	93
CT .....	105	SDI.....	94
defining .....	107	TO .....	27
Display		Top	
BT.....	111	command.....	21
CT.....	110	TRACK statement	
DOWN.....	113	macro.....	190
NT .....	113	Transaction sets	
RT.....	112	external.....	130
UP .....	113	internal .....	128
narrower term: .....	106	Trigram.....	29
NR.....	105	TRIP	
NT .....	105	error messages	
operators.....	114	where displayed.....	41
related term: .....	107	leaving .....	23
RT .....	105	<b>logging on</b> .....	15
SN .....	105	TRIPmanager navigation.....	12
UF .....	105	Truncation	
using.....	107	symbol	
<b>Time</b> .....	36	# 19, 28	
and database Corr.....	18	: 57	
data type .....	13	<b>Truncation</b> .....	57
field type .....	27	Tutorials.....	10
format .....	27	<b>first</b> .....	15
		<b>second</b> .....	25

third.....	45	username .....	164, 165
UF .....	105	details	
Unigram .....	29	group .....	164
Unselect.....	30	Username.....	15
UP		Variables	
Display.....	113	macro.....	186
Upper case		Venn diagram .....	26
as convention.....	8	Vlew .....	98
User		in search forms .....	68
administration.....	10, 163	Virtual field	
environment .....	163	and DEfine MAP.....	119
identification.....	163	<b>Vocabulary, database</b> .....	29
manager		Window	
and logging on to TRIP.....	15	change password.....	163
procedures .....	10, 169	Data Entry.....	150
profile.....	26, 164	Display .....	30
attributes.....	164	macro.....	188
date form .....	164, 166	Open Database	
separator characters .....	166	and double chevron (..>>) .....	20
details .....	164	Search History.....	17
group .....	165	Show	
manager .....	164, 165	example.....	20, 21, 22
start module .....	164, 165	WRITE statement	
start procedure.....	164, 165	macro.....	188
user details .....	165	XOR .....	25